

# $\text{\LaTeX}$ XML *The Manual*

A  $\text{\LaTeX}$  to XML Converter;  
*0.7.9alpha*

Bruce R. Miller

September 5, 2012



# Contents

<b>Contents</b>	<b>iii</b>
<b>List of Figures</b>	<b>vii</b>
<b>1 Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2 Using L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>XML</b>	<b>3</b>
2.1 Conversion . . . . .	4
2.2 Postprocessing . . . . .	5
2.3 Splitting . . . . .	8
2.4 Sites . . . . .	9
2.5 Individual Formula . . . . .	9
<b>3 Architecture</b>	<b>11</b>
3.1 latexml architecture . . . . .	11
3.1.1 Digestion . . . . .	12
3.1.2 Construction . . . . .	13
3.1.3 Rewriting . . . . .	13
3.1.4 MathParsing . . . . .	13
3.1.5 Serialization . . . . .	14
3.2 latexmlpost architecture . . . . .	14
<b>4 Customization</b>	<b>15</b>
4.1 latexml Customization . . . . .	16
4.1.1 Expansion . . . . .	16
4.1.2 Digestion . . . . .	18
4.1.3 Construction . . . . .	20
4.1.4 Document Model . . . . .	22
4.1.5 Rewriting . . . . .	23
4.1.6 Packages and Options . . . . .	24
4.1.7 Miscellaneous . . . . .	25
4.2 latexmlpost Customization . . . . .	25
4.2.1 XSLT . . . . .	25
4.2.2 CSS . . . . .	26

<b>5</b>	<b>Mathematics</b>	<b>27</b>
5.1	Math Details . . . . .	28
5.1.1	Internal Math Representation . . . . .	28
5.1.2	Grammatical Roles . . . . .	30
<b>6</b>	<b>Localization</b>	<b>33</b>
6.1	Numbering . . . . .	33
6.2	Input Encodings . . . . .	34
6.3	Output Encodings . . . . .	34
6.4	Babel . . . . .	34
<b>7</b>	<b>Alignments</b>	<b>35</b>
7.1	$\text{\TeX}$ Alignments . . . . .	35
7.2	Tabular Header Heuristics . . . . .	35
7.3	Math Forks . . . . .	36
7.4	$\text{eqnarray}$ . . . . .	37
7.5	AMS Alignments . . . . .	37
<b>8</b>	<b>ToDo</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>A</b>	<b>Commands</b>	<b>43</b>
A.1	<code>latexml</code> . . . . .	43
A.1.1	Synopsis . . . . .	43
A.1.2	Options & Arguments . . . . .	44
A.1.3	See also . . . . .	46
A.2	<code>latexmlpost</code> . . . . .	47
A.2.1	Synopsis . . . . .	47
A.2.2	Options & Arguments . . . . .	49
A.2.3	See also . . . . .	54
A.3	<code>latexmlmath</code> . . . . .	55
A.3.1	Synopsis . . . . .	55
A.3.2	Options & Arguments . . . . .	56
A.3.3	Other Options . . . . .	57
A.3.4	BUGS . . . . .	58
A.3.5	See also . . . . .	58
<b>B</b>	<b>Bindings</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>C</b>	<b>Modules</b>	<b>61</b>
C.1	<code>LaTeXML</code> . . . . .	61
C.1.1	Synopsis . . . . .	61
C.1.2	Description . . . . .	61
C.1.3	See also . . . . .	62
C.2	<code>LaTeXML::Object</code> . . . . .	64
C.2.1	Description . . . . .	64
C.3	<code>LaTeXML::Definition</code> . . . . .	65
C.3.1	Description . . . . .	65

C.4	LaTeXML::Global	68
C.4.1	Synopsis	68
C.4.2	Description	68
C.5	LaTeXML::Error	72
C.5.1	Description	72
C.6	LaTeXML::Package	73
C.6.1	Synopsis	73
C.6.2	Description	74
C.7	LaTeXML::Parameters	96
C.7.1	Description	96
C.8	LaTeXML::State	98
C.8.1	Description	98
C.9	LaTeXML::Token	101
C.9.1	Description	101
C.10	LaTeXML::Box	103
C.10.1	Description	103
C.11	LaTeXML::Number	106
C.11.1	Description	106
C.12	LaTeXML::Font	108
C.12.1	Description	108
C.13	LaTeXML::Mouth	109
C.13.1	Description	109
C.14	LaTeXML::Gullet	111
C.14.1	Description	111
C.15	LaTeXML::Stomach	114
C.15.1	Description	114
C.16	LaTeXML::Document	116
C.16.1	Description	116
C.17	LaTeXML::Model	123
C.17.1	Description	123
C.18	LaTeXML::Rewrite	126
C.18.1	Description	126
C.19	LaTeXML::MathParser	127
C.19.1	Description	127
C.20	LaTeXML::Bib	129
C.20.1	Description	129
<b>D</b>	<b>Utility Modules</b>	<b>131</b>
D.1	LaTeXML::Util::Pathname	131
D.1.1	Description	131
D.2	LaTeXML::Util::KeyVal	133
D.2.1	Description	133

<b>E</b>	<b>Postprocessing Modules</b>	<b>135</b>
E.1	LaTeXML::Post . . . . .	135
E.2	LaTeXML::Post::MathML, LaTeXML::Post::MathML::Presentation, LaTeXML::Post::MathML::Content . . . . .	135
E.2.1	Synopsis . . . . .	135
E.2.2	Description . . . . .	135
E.2.3	Math Processors, Generally. . . . .	138
<b>F</b>	<b>Schema</b>	<b>139</b>
F.1	Module LaTeXML . . . . .	139
F.2	Module LaTeXML-common . . . . .	141
F.3	Module LaTeXML-inline . . . . .	148
F.4	Module LaTeXML-block . . . . .	153
F.5	Module LaTeXML-para . . . . .	158
F.6	Module LaTeXML-math . . . . .	161
F.7	Module LaTeXML-tabular . . . . .	168
F.8	Module LaTeXML-picture . . . . .	171
F.9	Module LaTeXML-structure . . . . .	176
F.10	Module LaTeXML-bib . . . . .	188
<b>G</b>	<b>Error Codes</b>	<b>197</b>
	<b>Index</b>	<b>199</b>

# List of Figures

3.1	Flow of data through $\LaTeX$ ML's digestive tract. . . . .	12
-----	---	----





# Chapter 1

## Introduction

For many,  $\text{\LaTeX}$  is the preferred format for document authoring, particularly those involving significant mathematical content and where quality typesetting is desired. On the other hand, content-oriented XML is an extremely useful representation for documents, allowing them to be used, and reused, for a variety of purposes, not least, presentation on the Web. Yet, the style and intent of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  markup, as compared to XML markup, not to mention its programmability, presents difficulties in converting documents from the former format to the latter. Perhaps ironically, these difficulties can be particularly large for mathematical material, where there is a tendency for the markup to focus on appearance rather than meaning.

The choice of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  for authoring, and XML for delivery were natural and uncontroversial choices for the Digital Library of Mathematical Functions<sup>1</sup>. Faced with the need to perform this conversion and the lack of suitable tools to perform it, the DLMF project proceeded to develop their own tool,  $\text{\LaTeX}$ XML, for this purpose.

**Design Goals** The idealistic goals of  $\text{\LaTeX}$ XML are:

- Faithful emulation of  $\text{\TeX}$ 's behaviour.
- Easily extensible.
- Lossless; preserving both semantic and presentation cues.
- Uses abstract  $\text{\LaTeX}$ -like, extensible, document type.
- Determine the semantics of mathematical content  
(Good Presentation MathML, eventually Content MathML and OpenMath).

As these goals are not entirely practical, or even somewhat contradictory, they are implicitly modified by *as much as possible*. Completely mimicking  $\text{\TeX}$ 's, and  $\text{\LaTeX}$ 's, behaviour would seem to require the sneakiest modifications to  $\text{\TeX}$ , itself; redefining  $\text{\LaTeX}$ 's internals does not really guarantee compatibility. "Ease of use" is, of course,

---

<sup>1</sup><http://dlmf.nist.gov>

in the eye of the beholder. More significantly, few documents are likely to have completely unambiguous mathematics markup; human understanding of both the topic and the surrounding text is needed to properly interpret any particular fragment. Thus, rather than pretend to provide a “turn-key” solution, we expect that document-specific declarations or tuning to be necessary to faithfully convert documents. Towards this end, we provide a variety of means to customize the processing and declare the author’s intent. At the same time, especially for new documents, we encourage a more logical, content-oriented markup style, over a purely presentation-oriented style.

**Overview of this Manual** Chapter 2 describes the usage of  $\LaTeX$ XML, along with common use cases and techniques. Chapter 3 describes the system architecture in some detail. Strategies for customization and implementation of new packages is described in Chapter 4. The special considerations for mathematics, including details of representation and how to improve the conversion, are covered in Chapter 5. An overview of outstanding issues and planned future improvements are given in Chapter 8.

Finally, the Appendices give detailed documentation the system components: Appendix A describes the command-line programs provided by the system; Appendices C and D describes the core and utility Perl modules comprising the system, while Appendix E describes the postprocessing modules; Appendix F describes the XML schema used by  $\LaTeX$ XML; finally, Appendix G gives an overview of the warning and error messages that  $\LaTeX$ XML may generate.

If all else fails, please consult the source code, or the author.

Using  $\LaTeX$ XML, and programming for it, can be somewhat confusing as one is dealing with several languages not normally combined, often within the same file, — Perl,  $\TeX$  and XML (along with XSLT, HTML, CSS), plus shell programming. To help visually distinguish different contexts, if only slightly, we’ll try to put ‘programming’ oriented material (Perl,  $\TeX$ ) in a typewriter font, like `this`; XML material will be put in a sans-serif face like `this`.

!! In the interests of at least attempting to describe everything, there will be a lot of material that will not make much sense until you have dabbled quite a bit in  $\LaTeX$ XML’s internals. Such ‘advanced’ or dangerous material will be presented like this paragraph to make it easier to skip over.

## Chapter 2

# Using L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X<sup>ML</sup>

The main commands provided by the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X<sup>ML</sup> system are

**latexml** for converting T<sub>E</sub>X and BIBT<sub>E</sub>X sources to XML.

**latexmlpost** for various postprocessing tasks including conversion to HTML, processing images, conversion to MathML and so on.

The usage of these commands can be as simple as

```
latexml doc.tex | latexmpost --dest=doc.xhtml
```

to convert a single document into XHTML, or as complicated as

```
latexml --dest=1.xml ch1
latexml --dest=2.xml ch2
...
latexml --dest=b.xml b
latexml --dest=B.xml B.bib
latexmlpost --prescan --db=my.db --bib=B.xml --dest=1.xhtml 1
latexmlpost --prescan --db=my.db --bib=B.xml --dest=2.xhtml 2
...
latexmlpost --prescan --db=my.db --bib=B.xml --dest=b.xhtml b
latexmlpost --noscan --db=my.db --bib=B.xml --dest=1.xhtml 1
latexmlpost --noscan --db=my.db --bib=B.xml --dest=2.xhtml 2
...
latexmlpost --noscan --db=my.db --bib=B.xml --dest=b.xhtml b
```

to convert a whole set of documents, including a bibliography, into a complete interconnected site.

How best to use the commands depends, of course, on what you are trying to achieve. In the next section, we'll describe the use of **latexml**, which performs the conversion to XML. The following sections consider a sequence of successively more complicated postprocessing situations, using **latexmlpost**, by which one or more T<sub>E</sub>X sources can be converted into one or more web documents or a complete site.

Additionally, there is a convenience command **latexmlmath** for converting individual formula into various formats.

## 2.1 Basic XML Conversion

The command

```
latexml {options} --destination=doc.xml doc
```

converts the T<sub>E</sub>X document `doc.tex`, or standard input if `-` is used in place of the file-name, to XML. It loads any required definition bindings (see below), reads, tokenizes, expands and digests the document creating an XML structure. It then performs some document rewriting, parses the mathematical content and writes the result, in this case, to `doc.xml`; if no `--destination` is supplied, it writes the result to standard output. For details on the processing, see Chapter 3, and Chapter 5 for more information about math parsing.

**BIB<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> processing** If the source file has an explicit extension of `.bib`, or if the `--bibtex` option is used, the source will be treated as a BIB<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> database.

**!!** Note that the timing is different than with BIB<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. Normally, BIB<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> simply selects and formats a subset of the bibliographic entries according to the `.aux` file; all T<sub>E</sub>X expansion and processing is carried out only when the result is included in the main L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X document. In contrast, `latexml` processes and expands the entire bibliography when it is converted to XML; the selection of entries is done during post-processing. One implication is that `latexml` does not know about packages included in the main document; if the bibliography uses macros defined in such packages, the packages must be explicitly specified using the `--preload` option.

**Useful Options** The number and detail of progress and debugging messages printed during processing can be controlled using

```
--verbose or --quiet
```

They can be repeated to get even more or fewer details.

Directories to search (in addition to the working directory) for various files can be specified using

```
--path={directory}
```

This option can be repeated.

Whenever multiple sources are being used (including multiple bibliographies), the option

```
--documentid=id
```

should be used to provide a unique ID for the document root element. This ID is used as the base for id's of the child-elements within the document, so that they are unique, as well.

See the documentation for the command `latexml` for less common options.

**Loading Bindings** Although  $\LaTeX$ ML is reasonably adept at processing  $\TeX$  macros, it generally benefits from having its own implementation of the macros, primitives, environments and other control sequences appearing in a document because these are what define the mapping into XML. The  $\LaTeX$ ML-analogue of a style or class file we call a  $\LaTeX$ ML-binding file, or *binding* for short; these files have an additional extension `.ltxml`.

In fact, since style files often bypass structurally or semantically meaningful macros by directly invoking macros internal to  $\LaTeX$ ,  $\LaTeX$ ML actually avoids processing style files when a binding is unavailable. The option

```
--includestyles
```

can be used to override this behaviour and allow  $\LaTeX$ ML to (attempt to) process raw style files. [A more selective, per-file, option may be developed in the future, if there is sufficient demand — please provide use cases.]

$\LaTeX$ ML always starts with the `TeX.pool` binding loaded, and if  $\LaTeX$ -specific commands are recognized, `LaTeX.pool` as well. Any input directives within the source loads the appropriate binding: `\documentclass{article}` or `\usepackage{graphicx}` will load the bindings `article.cls.ltxml` or `graphicx.sty.ltxml`, respectively; the obsolete `\documentstyle{article}` directive is also recognized. An `\input` directive will search for files with both `.tex` and `.sty` extensions; it will prefer a binding file if one is found, but will load and digest a `.tex` if no binding is found. An `\include` directive (and related ones) search only for a `.tex` file, which is processed and digested as usual.

There are two mechanisms for customization: a document-specific binding file `doc.latexml` will be loaded, if present; the option

```
--preload=binding
```

will load the binding file `binding.ltxml`. The `--preload` option can be repeated; both kinds of preload are loaded before document processing, and are processed in order.

See Chapter 4 for details about what can go in these bindings; and Appendix B for a list of bindings currently included in the distribution.

## 2.2 Basic Postprocessing

In the simplest situation, you have a single  $\TeX$  source document from which you want to generate a single output document. The command

```
latexmlpost options --destination=doc.xhtml doc
```

or similarly with `--destination=doc.html` or `--destination=doc.html5`, will carry out a set of appropriate transformations in sequence:

- scanning of labels and ids;
- filling in the index and bibliography (if needed);
- cross-referencing;

- conversion of math;
- conversion of graphics and picture environments to web format (png);
- applying an XSLT stylesheet.

The output format affects the defaults for each step and is determined by the file extension of `--destination`, or by the option

```
--format=(xhtml|html|html5|xml)
```

which overrides the extension used in the destination. The recognized formats are:

**html** both math and graphics are converted to png images; the stylesheet `LaTeXML-html.xslt` is used.

**xhtml** math is converted to Presentation MathML, other graphics are converted to images; the stylesheet `LaTeXML-xhtml.xslt` is used.

**html5** math is converted to Presentation MathML, other graphics are converted to images; the stylesheet `LaTeXML-html5.xslt` is used. (Note that the extension `.html5` is not commonly recognized by web servers)

**xml** no math, graphics or XSLT conversion is carried out.

Of course, all of these conversions can be controlled or overridden by explicit options described below. For more details about less common options, see the command documentation [latexmlpost](#), as well as Appendix E.

**Scanning** The scanning step collects information about all labels, ids, indexing commands, cross-references and so on, to be used in the following postprocessing stages.

**Indexing** An index is built from `\index` markup, if `makeidx`'s `\printindex` command has been used, but this can be disabled by

```
--noindex
```

The index entries can be permuted with the option

```
--permutedindex
```

Thus `\index{term a!term b}` also shows up as `\index{term b!term a}`. This leads to a more complete, but possibly rather silly, index, depending on how the terms have been written.

**Bibliography** Bibilographic data from BibTeX can be provided with the option

```
--bibliography=bibfile.xml
```

The bibliography would have typically been produced by running

```
latexml --dest=bibfile.xml bibfile.bib
```

Note that the XML file, `bibfile`, is not used to directly produce an HTML-formatted bibliography, rather it is used to fill in the `\bibliography{ . . }` within a T<sub>E</sub>X document.

**Cross-Referencing** In this stage, the scanned information is used to fill in the text and links of cross-references within the document. The option

```
--urlstyle=(server|negotiated|file)
```

can control the format of urls with the document.

**server** formats urls appropriate for use from a web server. In particular, trailing `index.html` are omitted. (default)

**negotiated** formats urls appropriate for use by a server that implements content negotiation. File extensions for `html` and `xhtml` are omitted. This enables you to set up a server that serves the appropriate format depending on the browser being used.

**file** formats urls explicitly, with full filename and extension. This allows the files to be browsed from the local filesystem.

**Math Conversion** Specific conversions of the mathematics can be requested using the options

```
--mathimages           # converts math to png images,
--presentationmathml or --pmml # creates Presentation MathML
--contentmathml or --cmml  # creates Content MathML
--openmath or --om        # creates OpenMath
--keepXMath              # preserves  $\TeX$ ML's XMath
```

(Each of these options can also be negated if needed, eg. `--nomathimages`) It must be pointed out that the Content MathML and OpenMath conversions are currently rather experimental.

If more than one of these conversions are requested, parallel math markup will be generated with the first format being the primary one, and the additional ones added as secondary formats. The secondary format is incorporated using whatever means the primary format uses; eg. MathML combines formats using `m:semantics` and `m:annotation-xml`.

**Graphics processing** Conversion of graphics (eg. from the `graphic(s|x)` packages' `\includegraphics`) can be enabled or disabled using

```
--graphicsimages or --nographicsimages
```

Similarly, the conversion of `picture` environments can be controlled with

```
--pictureimages or --nopictureimages
```

An experimental capability for converting the latter to SVG can be controlled by

```
--svg or --nosvg
```

**Stylesheets and Javascript** If you wish to provide your own XSLT CSS stylesheets or javascript programs, the options

```
--stylesheet=stylesheet.xsl
--css=stylesheet.css
--nodefaultcss
--javascript=program.js
```

can be used. The `--css` and `--javascript` options provide CSS stylesheets and javascript programs respectively; they can be repeated to include multiple files. In both cases, if a local file is referenced, it will be copied to the destination directory, but otherwise urls are accepted.

The distribution provides several stylesheets in addition to `core.css` stylesheet (which is included by default unless `--nodefaultcss` is used).

**navbar-left.css** Places a navigation bar on the left.

**navbar-right.css** Places a navigation bar on the right.

**theme-blue.css** Colors various features in a soft blue.

**amsart.css** A style appropriate for many journal articles.

For example, to convert your document to HTML5 with MathML, but use MathJax<sup>1</sup> for browsers that don't natively support MathML, you might use:

```
latexmlpost --format=html5 \
  --javascript='http://cdn.mathjax.org/mathjax/latest/MathJax.js?config=MML_HTMLorMML'
  --destination=somewhere/doc.html doc
```

See 4.2.2 for more information on developing your own stylesheets. To develop CSS and XSLT stylesheets, a knowledge of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X<sub>ML</sub> document type is also necessary; see Appendix F.

## 2.3 Splitting the Output

For larger documents, it is often desirable to break the result into several interlinked pages. This split, carried out before scanning, is requested by

```
--splitat=level
```

where *level* is one of `chapter`, `section`, `subsection`, or `subsubsection`. For example, `section` would split the document into chapters (if any) and sections, along with separate bibliography, index and any appendices. (See also `--splitxpath` in `latexml`.) The removed document nodes are replaced by a Table of Contents.

The extra files are named using either the id or label of the root node of each new page document according to

```
--splitnaming=(id|idrelative|label|labelrelative)
```

---

<sup>1</sup><http://www.mathjax.org>



The relative foms create shorter names in subdirectories for each level of splitting. (See also `--urlstyle` and `--documentid` in `latexml`.)

Additionally, the index and bibliography can be split into separate pages according to the initial letter of entries by using the options

```
--splitindex and --splitbibliography
```

## 2.4 Site processing

A more complicated situation combines several  $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$  sources into a single interlinked site consisting of multiple pages and a composite index and bibliography.

**Conversion** First, all  $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$  sources must be converted to XML, using `latexml`. Since every target-able element in all files to be combined must have a unique identifier, it is useful to prefix each identifier with a unique value for each file. The `latexml` option `--documentid=id` provides this.

**Scanning** Secondly, all XML files must be split and scanned using the command

```
latexmlpost --prescan --dbfile=DB --dest=i.xhtml i
```

where `DB` names a file in which to store the scanned data. Other conversions, including writing the output file, are skipped in this prescanning step.

**Pagination** Finally, all XML files are cross-referenced and converted into the final format using the command

```
latexmlpost --noscan --dbfile=DB --dest=i.xhtml i
```

which skips the unnecessary scanning step.

## 2.5 Individual Formula

For cases where you'd just like to convert a single formula to, say, MathML, and don't mind the overhead, we've combined the pre- and post-processing into a single, handy, command `latexmlmath`. For example,

```
latexmlmath --pmml=- \\frac{b\\pm\\sqrt{b^2-4ac}}{2a}
```

will print the MathML to standard output. To convert the formula to a `png` image, say `quad.png`, use the option `--mathimage=quad.png`.

Note that this involves putting  $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$  code on the command line. You've got to 'slashify' your code in whatever way is necessary so that after your shell is finished with it, the string that is passed to `latexmlmath` sees is normal  $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ . In the example above, in most unix-like shells, we only needed to double-up the backslashes.



## Chapter 3

# Architecture

As has been said,  $\LaTeX$ ML consists of two main programs: `latexml` responsible for converting the  $\TeX$  source into XML; and `latexmlpost` responsible for converting to target formats. See Figure 3.1 for illustration.

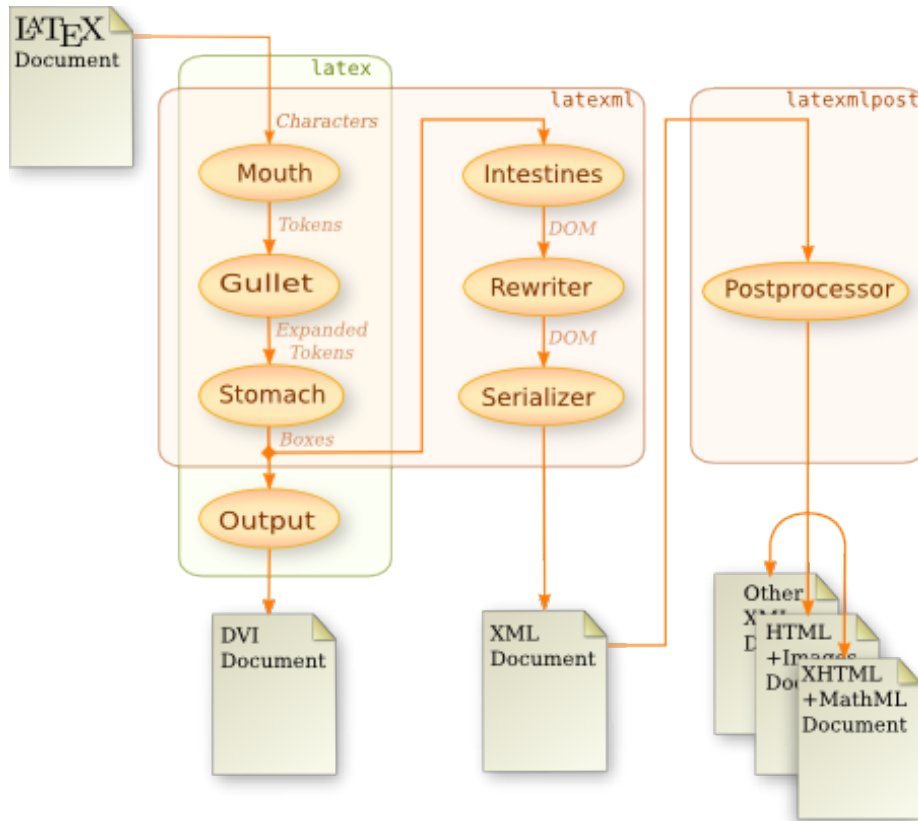
The casual user needs only a superficial understanding of the architecture. The programmer who wants to extend or customize  $\LaTeX$ ML will, however, need a fairly good understanding of the process and the distinctions between text, Tokens, Boxes, Whatsits and XML, on the one hand, and Macros, Primitives and Constructors, on the other. In a way, the implementer of a  $\LaTeX$ ML binding for a  $\LaTeX$  package may need a *better* understanding than when implementing for  $\LaTeX$  since they have to understand not only the  $\TeX$ , where only macros are available, and the intended effect of the package, but also  $\LaTeX$ ML with more options and a different set of intended effects.

The intention is that all semantics of the original document is preserved by `latexml`, or even inferred by parsing; `latexmlpost` is for formatting and conversion. Depending on your needs, the  $\LaTeX$ ML document resulting from `latexml` may be sufficient. Alternatively, you may want to enhance the document by applying third party programs before postprocessing.

### 3.1 latexml architecture

Like  $\TeX$ , `latexml` is data-driven: the text and executable control sequences (ie. macros and primitives) in the source file (and any packages loaded) direct the processing. For  $\LaTeX$ ML, the user exerts control over the conversion, and customizes it, by providing alternative bindings of the control sequences and packages, by declaring properties of the desired document structure, and by defining rewrite rules to be applied to the constructed document tree.

The top-level class, `LaTeXML`, manages the processing, providing several methods for converting a  $\TeX$  document or string into an XML document, with varying degrees of postprocessing and writing the document to file. It binds a `State` object (to `$STATE`) to maintain the current state of bindings for control sequence definitions and emulates  $\TeX$ 's scoping rules. The processing is broken into the following stages

Figure 3.1: Flow of data through L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>XML's digestive tract.

**Digestion** the T<sub>E</sub>X-like digestion phase which converts the input into boxes.

**Construction** converts the resulting boxes into an XML DOM.

**Rewriting** applies rewrite rules to modify the DOM.

**Math Parsing** parses the tokenized mathematics.

**Serialization** converts the XML DOM to a string, or writes to file.

### 3.1.1 Digestion

Digestion is carried out primarily in a *pull* mode: The **Stomach** pulls expanded **Tokens** from the **Gullet**, which itself pulls **Tokens** from the **Mouth**. The **Mouth** converts characters from the plain text input into **Tokens** according to the current *catcodes* (category codes) assigned to them (as bound in the *State*). The **Gullet** is responsible for expanding Macros, that is, control sequences currently bound to

`Expandables` and for parsing sequences of tokens into common core datatypes (`Number`, `Dimension`, etc.). See 4.1.1 for how to define macros and affect expansion.

The `Stomach` then digests these tokens by executing `Primitive` control sequences, usually for side effect, but often for converting material into `Lists` of `Boxes` and `Whatsits` (A Macro should never digest). Normally, textual tokens are converted to `Boxes` in the current font. The main (intentional) deviation of `LATEX`ML's digestion from that of `TEX` is the introduction of a new type of definition, a `Constructor`, responsible for constructing XML fragments. A control sequence bound to `Constructor` is digested by reading and processing its arguments and wrapping these up in a `Whatsit`. Before- and after-daemons, essentially anonymous primitives, associated with the `Constructor` are executed before and after digesting the `Constructor` arguments' markup, which can affect the context of that digestion, as well as augmenting the `Whatsit` with additional properties. See 4.1.2 for how to define primitives and affect digestion.

### 3.1.2 Construction

Given the `List` of `Boxes` and `Whatsits`, we proceed to constructing an XML document. This consists of creating an `Document` object, containing a libxml2 document, `XML::LibXML::Document`, and having it absorb the digested material. Absorbing a `Box` converts it to text content, with provision made to track and set the current font. A `Whatsit` is absorbed by invoking the associated `Constructor` to insert an appropriate XML fragment, including elements and attributes, and recursively processing their arguments as necessary See 4.1.3 for how to define constructors.

A `Model` is maintained throughout the digestion phase which accumulates any document model declarations, in particular the document type (RelaxNG is preferred, but DTD is also supported). As `LATEX` markup is more like SGML than XML, additional declarations may be used (see `Tag` in `Package`) to indicate which elements may be automatically opened or closed when needed to build a document tree that matches the document type. As an example, a `<subsection>` will automatically be closed when a `<section>` is begun. Additionally, extra bits of code can be executed whenever particularly elements are opened or closed (also specified by `Tag`). See 4.1.4 for how to affect the schema.

### 3.1.3 Rewriting

Once the basic document is constructed, `Rewrite` rules are applied which can perform various functions. Ligatures and combining mathematics digits and letters (in certain fonts) into composite math tokens are handled this way. Additionally, declarations of the type or grammatical role of math tokens can be applied here See 4.1.5 for how to define rewrite rules.

### 3.1.4 MathParsing

After rewriting, a grammar based parser is applied to the mathematical nodes in order to infer, at least, the structure of the expressions, if not the meaning. Mathematics parsing, and how to control it, is covered in detail in Chapter 5.

### 3.1.5 Serialization

Here, we simply convert the DOM into string form, and output it.

## 3.2 latexmlpost architecture

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X<sub>M</sub>L's postprocessor is primarily for format conversion. It operates by applying a sequence of filters responsible for transforming or splitting documents, or their parts, from one format to another.

Exactly which postprocessing filter modules are applied depends on the command-line options to `latexmlpost`. Postprocessing filter modules are generally applied in the following order:

**Split** splits the document into several 'page' documents, according to `--split` or `--splitxpath` options.

**Scan** scans the document for all ID's, labels and cross-references. This data may be stored in an external database, depending on the `--db` option.

**MakeIndex** fills in the `index` element (due to a `\printindex`) with material generated by `index`.

**MakeBibliography** fills in the `bibliography` element (from `\bibliography`) with material extracted from the file specified by the `--bibliography` option, for all `\cite`'d items.

**CrossRef** establishes all cross-references between documents and parts thereof, filling in the references with appropriate text for the hyperlink.

**MathImages, MathML, OpenMath** performs various conversions of the internal Math representation.

**PictureImages, Graphics, SVG** performs various graphics conversions.

**XSLT** applies an XSLT transformation to each document.

**Writer** writes the document to a file in the appropriate location.

See 4.2 for how to customize the postprocessing.

## Chapter 4

# Customization

The processing of the  $\LaTeX$  document, its conversion into XML and ultimately to XHTML or other formats can be customized in various ways, at different stages of processing and in different levels of complexity. Depending on what you are trying to achieve, some approaches may be easier than others: Recall Larry Wall’s adage “There’s more than one way to do it.”

By far, the easiest way to customize the style of the output is by modifying the CSS, see 4.2.2, so that is the recommended way when it applies.

The basic conversion from  $\TeX$  markup to XML is done by `latexml`, and is obviously affected by the mapping between the  $\TeX$  markup and the XML markup. This mapping is defined by macros, primitives and, of course, constructors; The mapping that is in force at any time is determined by the  $\LaTeX$ XML-specific implementations of the  $\TeX$  packages involved, what we call ‘bindings’. Consequently, you can customize the conversion by modifying the bindings used by `latexml`.

Likewise, you extend `latexml` by creating bindings for  $\TeX$  styles that hadn’t been covered.

Or by defining your own  $\TeX$  style file along with its  $\LaTeX$ XML binding.

In all these cases, you’ll need the same skills: understanding and using text, tokens, boxes and whatsits, as well as macros and macro expansion, primitives and digestion, and finally whatsits and constructors. Understanding  $\TeX$  helps; reading the  $\LaTeX$ XML bindings in the distribution will give an idea of how we use it. To teach  $\LaTeX$ XML about new macros, to implement bindings for a package not yet covered, or to modify the way  $\TeX$  control sequences are converted to XML, you will want to look at 4.1. To modify the way that XML is converted to other formats such as HTML, see 4.2.

A particularly powerful strategy when you have control over the source documents is to develop a semantically oriented  $\LaTeX$  style file, say `smacros.sty`, and then provide a  $\LaTeX$ XML binding as `smacros.sty.ltxml`. In the  $\LaTeX$  version, you may style the terms as you like; in the  $\LaTeX$ XML version, you could control the conversion so as to preserve the semantics in the XML. If  $\LaTeX$ XML’s schema is insufficient, then you would need to extend it with your own representation; although that is beyond the scope of the current manual, see the discussion below in 4.1.4. In such a case, you would also need to extend the XSLT stylesheets, as discussed in 4.2.1.

## 4.1 latexml Customization

This layer of customization deals with modifying the way a  $\LaTeX$  document is transformed into  $\LaTeX$ ML's XML. In 2.1 the loading of various bindings was described. The facilities described in the following subsections apply in all such cases, whether used to customize the processing of a particular document or to implement a new  $\LaTeX$  package. We make no attempt to be comprehensive here; please consult the documentation for [Global](#) and [Package](#), as well as the binding files included with the system for more guidance.

A  $\LaTeX$ ML binding is actually a Perl module, and as such, a familiarity with Perl is helpful. A binding file will look something like:

```
use LaTeXML::Package;
use strict;

# Your code here!

1;
```

The final '1' is required; it tells Perl that the module has loaded successfully. In between, comes any Perl code you wish, along with the definitions and declarations as described here.

Actually, familiarity with Perl is more than merely helpful, as is familiarity with  $\TeX$  and XML! When writing a binding, you will be programming with all three languages. Of course, you need to know the  $\TeX$  corresponding to the macros that you intend to implement, but sometimes it is most convenient to implement them completely, or in part, in  $\TeX$ , itself (eg. using **DefMacro**), rather than in Perl. At the other end, constructors (eg. using **DefConstructor**) are usually defined by patterns of XML.

### 4.1.1 Expansion & Macros

Macros are defined using **DefMacro**, such as the pointless:

```
DefMacro('\mybold{','\textbf{#1}');
```

The two arguments to **DefMacro** we call the *prototype* and the *replacement*. In the prototype, the `{ }` specifies a single normal  $\TeX$  parameter. The replacement is here a string which will be tokenized and the `#1` will be replaced by the tokens of the argument. Presumably the entire result will eventually be further expanded and or processed.

Whereas,  $\TeX$  normally uses `#1`, and  $\LaTeX$  has developed a complex scheme where it is often necessary to peek ahead token by token to recognize optional arguments, we have attempted to develop a suggestive, and easier to use, notation for parameters. Thus a prototype `\foo{ }` specifies a single normal argument, where `\foo[ ]{ }` would take an optional argument followed by a required one. More complex argument prototypes can be found in [Package](#). As in  $\TeX$ , the macro's arguments are neither expanded nor digested until the expansion itself is further expanded or digested.



The macro's replacement can also be Perl code, typically an anonymous `sub`, which gets the current `Gullet` followed by the macro's arguments as its arguments. It must return a list of `Token`'s which will be used as the expansion of the macro. The following two examples show alternative ways of writing the above macro:

```
DefMacro('\mybold{}', sub {
    my($gullet,$arg)=@_;
    (T_CS('\textbf'),T_BEGIN,$arg,T_END); });
```

or alternatively

```
DefMacro('\mybold{}', sub {
    Invocation(T_CS('\textbf'),$_[1]); });
```

Functions that are useful for dealing with `Tokens` and writing macros include the following:

- Constants for the corresponding  $\TeX$  catcodes:
 

<code>CC_ESCAPE,</code>	<code>CC_BEGIN,</code>	<code>CC_END,</code>	<code>CC_MATH,</code>
<code>CC_ALIGN,</code>	<code>CC_EOL,</code>	<code>CC_PARAM,</code>	<code>CC_SUPER,</code>
<code>CC_SUB,</code>	<code>CC_IGNORE,</code>	<code>CC_SPACE,</code>	<code>CC_LETTER,</code>
<code>CC_OTHER,</code>	<code>CC_ACTIVE,</code>	<code>CC_COMMENT,</code>	<code>CC_INVALID</code>
- Constants for tokens with the appropriate content and catcode:
 

<code>T_BEGIN,</code>	<code>T_END,</code>	<code>T_MATH,</code>	<code>T_ALIGN,</code>	<code>T_PARAM,</code>
<code>T_SUB,</code>	<code>T_SUPER,</code>	<code>T_SPACE,</code>	<code>T_CR</code>	
- `T_LETTER($char)`, `T_OTHER($char)`, `T_ACTIVE($char)`, create tokens of the appropriate catcode with the given text content.
- `T_CS($cs)` creates a control sequence token; the string `$cs` should typically begin with the slash.
- `Token($string,$catcode)` creates a token with the given content and catcode.
- `Tokens($token,...)` creates a `Tokens` object which represents a list of `Tokens`.
- `Tokenize($string)` converts the string to a `Tokens`, using  $\TeX$ 's standard catcode assignments.
- `TokenizeInternal($string)` like `Tokenize`, but treating `@` as a letter.
- `Explode($string)` converts the string to a `Tokens` where letter character are given catcode `CC_OTHER`.
- `Expand($tokens)` expands `$tokens` (a `Tokens`), returning a `Tokens`; there should be no expandable tokens in the result.
- `Invocation($cstoken,$arg,...)` Returns a `Tokens` representing the sequence needed to invoke `$cstoken` on the given arguments (each are `Tokens`, or undef for an unsupplied optional argument).

### 4.1.2 Digestion & Primitives

Primitives are processed during the digestion phase in the *Stomach*, after macro expansion (in the *Gullet*), and before document construction (in the *Document*). Our primitives generalize TeX's notion of primitive; they are used to implement TeX's primitives, invoke other side effects and to convert Tokens into Boxes, in particular, Unicode strings in a particular font.

Here are a few primitives from `TeX.pool`:

```
DefPrimitive('\begingroup', sub {
  $_[0]->begingroup; });
DefPrimitive('\endgroup', sub {
  $_[0]->endgroup; });
DefPrimitiveI('\batchmode', undef, undef);
DefPrimitiveI('\OE', undef, "\x{0152}");
DefPrimitiveI('\tiny', undef, undef,
  font=>{size=>'tiny'});
```

Other than for implementing TeX's own primitives, `DefPrimitive` is needed less often than `DefMacro` or `DefConstructor`. The main thing to keep in mind is that primitives are processed after macro expansion, by the *Stomach*. They are most useful for side-effects, changing the *State*.

**DefPrimitive**(\$prototype, \$replacement, %options)

The replacement is either a string which will be used to create a Box in the current font, or can be code taking the *Stomach* and the control sequence arguments as argument; like macros, these arguments are not expanded or digested by default, they must be explicitly digested if necessary. The replacement code must either return nothing (eg. ending with `return;`) or should return a list (ie. a Perl list (...)) of digested Boxes or Whatsits.

Options to `DefPrimitive` are:

- `mode=>('math' | 'text')` switches to math or text mode, if needed;
- `requireMath=>1, forbidMath=>1` requires, or forbids, this primitive to appear in math mode;
- `bounded=>1` specifies that all digestion (of arguments and daemons) will take place within an implicit TeX group, so that any side-effects are localized, rather than affecting the global state;
- `font=>{%hash}` switches the font used for any created text; recognized font keys are family, series, shape, size, color;

Note that if the font change should only affect the material digested within this command itself, then `bounded=>1` should be used; otherwise, the font change will remain in effect after the command is processed.

- `beforeDigest=>CODE($stomach),`  
`afterDigest=>CODE($stomach)` provides code to be digested before and after processing the main part of the primitive.

Other functions useful for dealing with digestion and state are important for writing before & after daemons in constructors, as well as in Primitives; we give an overview here:

- **Digest**(\$tokens) digests \$tokens (a `Tokens`), returning a list of `Boxes` and `Whatsits`.
- **Let**(\$token1,\$token2) gives \$token1 the same meaning as \$token2, like `\let`.

**Bindings** The following functions are useful for accessing and storing information in the current `State`. It maintains a stack-like structure that mimics  $\text{\TeX}$ 's approach to binding; braces { and } open and close stack frames. (The `Stomach` methods `bgroup` and `egroup` can be used when explicitly needed.)

- **LookupValue**(\$symbol), **AssignValue**(\$string,\$value,\$scope) maintain arbitrary values in the current `State`, looking up or assigning the current value bound to \$symbol (a string). For assignments, the \$scope can be 'local' (the default, if \$scope is omitted), which changes the binding in the current stack frame. If \$scope is 'global', it assigns the value globally by undoing all bindings. The \$scope can also be another string, which indicates a named scope — but that is a more advanced topic.
- **PushValue**(\$symbol,\$value,...), **PopValue**(\$symbol), **UnshiftValue**(\$symbol,\$value,...), **ShiftValue**(\$symbol) These maintain the value of \$symbol as a list, with the operations having the same sense as in Perl; modifications are always global.
- **LookupCatcode**(\$char), **AssignCatcode**(\$char,\$catcode,\$scope) maintain the catcodes associated with characters.
- **LookupMeaning**(\$token), **LookupDefinition**(\$token) looks up the current meaning of the token, being any executable definition bound for it. If there is no such definition `LookupMeaning` returns the token itself, `LookupDefinition` returns undef.

**Counters** The following functions maintain  $\text{\LaTeX}$ -like counters, and generally also associate an ID with them. A counter's print form (ie. `\theequation` for equations) often ends up on the `refnum` attribute of elements; the associated ID is used for the `xml:id` attribute.

- **NewCounter**(\$name,\$within,%options), creates a  $\text{\LaTeX}$ -style counters. When \$within is used, the given counter will be reset whenever the counter \$within is incremented. This also causes the associated ID to be prefixed with \$within's ID. The option `idprefix=>$string` causes the ID to be prefixed with that string. For example,

```
NewCounter('section', 'document', idprefix=>'S');
NewCounter('equation', 'document', idprefix=>'E',
          idwithin=>'section');
```

would cause the third equation in the second section to have `ID='S2.E3'`.

- **CounterValue**(\$name) returns the [Number](#) representing the current value.
- **ResetCounter**(\$name) resets the counter to 0.
- **StepCounter**(\$name) steps the counter (and resets any others ‘within’ it), and returns the expansion of `\the$name`.
- **RefStepCounter**(\$name) steps the counter and any ID’s associated with it. It returns a hash containing `refnum` (expansion of `\the$name`) and `id` (expansion of `\the$name@ID`)
- **RefStepID**(\$name) steps the ID associated with the counter, without actually stepping the counter; this is useful for unnumbered units that normally would have both a `refnum` and ID.

### 4.1.3 Construction & Constructors

Constructors are where things get interesting, but also complex; they are responsible for defining how the XML is built. There are basic constructors corresponding to normal control sequences, as well as environments. Mathematics generally comes down to constructors, as well, but is covered in [Chapter 5](#).

Here are a couple of trivial examples of constructors:

```
DefConstructor(' \emph{ } ',
  "<ltx:emph>#1</ltx:emph>", mode=>'text');
DefConstructor(' \item[] ',
  "<ltx:item>?#1(<ltx:tag>#1</ltx:tag>)" );
DefEnvironment(' {quote} ',
  '<ltx:quote>#body</ltx:quote>',
  beforeDigest=>sub{ Let('\\\\', '\@block@cr'); });
DefConstructor(' \footnote[]{} ',
  "<ltx:note_class='footnote'_mark='#refnum'>#2</ltx:note>",
  mode=>'text',
  properties=> sub {
    ($_[1] ? (refnum=>$_[1]) : RefStepCounter('footnote')) });

DefConstructor($prototype,$replacement,%options)
```

The `$replacement` for a constructor describes the XML to be generated during the construction phase. It can either be a string representing the XML as a pattern (described below), or a subroutine `CODE($document,$arg1,...%props)` receiving the arguments and properties from the [Whatsit](#); it would invoke the methods of [Document](#) to construct the desired XML. The pattern as illustrated above, simply represents a serialization of the desired XML. In addition to literal replacement, the following may appear:

- `#1, #2, ... #name` inserts the construction of the argument or property in the XML;

- `&function($a,$b,...)` invokes the named function on the given arguments and inserts its value in place;
- `?COND(pattern)` or `?COND(ifpattern)(elsepattern)` conditionally inserts the patterns depending on the result of the conditional. `COND` would typically be testing the presence of an argument, `#1`, or property `#name` or invoking a function;
- `^` if this appears at the beginning of the pattern, the replacement is allowed to *float* up the current tree to wherever it might be allowed.

Options:

- `mode=>('math'|'text')` switches to math or text mode, if needed;
- `requireMath=>1`, `forbidMath=>1` requires, or forbids, this constructor to appear in math mode;
- `bounded=>1` specifies that all digestion (of arguments and daemons) will take place within an implicit  $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$  group, so that any side-effects are localized, rather than affecting the global state;
- `font=>{%hash}` switches the font used for any created text; recognized font keys are `family`, `series`, `shape`, `size`, `color`;
- `properties=>{%hash} | CODE($stomach,$arg1,..)` provides a set of properties to store in the `Whatsit` for eventual use in the constructor `$replacement`. If a subroutine is used, it also should return a hash of properties;
- `beforeDigest=>CODE($stomach)`,  
`afterDigest=>CODE($stomach,$whatsit)` provides code to be digested before and after digesting the arguments of the constructor, typically to alter the context of the digestion (before), or to augment the properties of the `Whatsit` (after);
- `beforeConstruct=>CODE($document,$whatsit)`,  
`afterConstruct=>CODE($document,$whatit)` provides code to be run before and after the main `$replacement` is effected; occasionally it is convenient to use the pattern form for the main `$replacement`, but one still wants to execute a bit of Perl code, as well;
- `captureBody=>(1 | $token)` specifies that an additional argument (like an environment body) will be read until the current  $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$  grouping ends, or until the specified `$token` is encountered. This argument is available to `$replacement` as `$body`;
- `scope=>('global'|'local'|$name)` specifies whether this definition is made globally, or in the current stack frame (default), (or in a named scope);

- `reversion=>$string|CODE(...), alias=>$cs` can be used when the `Whatsit` needs to be reverted into `TEX` code, and the default of simply reassembling based on the prototype is not desired. See the code for examples.

Some additional functions useful when writing constructors:

- **ToString**(\$stuff) converts \$stuff to a string, hopefully without `TEX` markup, suitable for use as document content and attribute values. Note that if \$stuff contains `Whatsits` generated by Constructors, it may not be possible to avoid `TEX` code. Contrast **ToString** to the following two functions.
- **UnTeX**(\$stuff) returns a string containing the `TEX` code that would generate \$stuff (this might not be the original `TEX`). The function `Revert($stuff)` returns the same information as a `Tokens` list.
- **Stringify**(\$stuff) returns a string more intended for debugging purposes; it reveals more of the structure and type information of the object and its parts.
- **CleanLabel**(\$arg), **CleanIndexKey**(\$arg), **CleanBibKey**(\$arg), **CleanURL**(\$arg) cleans up arguments (converting to string, handling invalid characters, etc) to make the argument appropriate for use as an attribute representing a label, index ID, etc.
- **UTF**(\$hex) returns the Unicode character for the given codepoint; this is useful for characters below 0x100 where Perl becomes confused about the encoding.

**DefEnvironment**(\$prototype,\$replacement,%options)

Environments are largely a special case of constructors, but the prototype starts with {envname}, rather than `\cmd`, the replacement will also typically involve #body representing the contents of the environment.

`DefEnvironment` takes the same options as `DefConstructor`, with the addition of

- `afterDigestBegin=>CODE($stomach,$whatsit)` provides code to digest after the `\begin{env}` is digested;
- `beforeDigestEnd=>CODE($stomach)` provides code to digest before the `\end{env}` is digested.

For those cases where you do not want an environment to correspond to a constructor, you may still (as in `LATEX`), define the two control sequences `\envname` and `\endenvname` as you like.

#### 4.1.4 Document Model

The following declarations are typically only needed when customizing the schema used by `LATEXML`.

- **RelaxNGSchema**(\$schema,%namespaces) declares the created XML document should be fit to the RelaxNG schema in \$schema; A file \$schema.rng should be findable in the current search paths. (Note that currently, L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>XML is unable to directly parse compact notation).
- **RegisterNamespace**(\$prefix,\$url) associates the prefix with the given namespace url. This allows you to use \$prefix as a namespace prefix when writing **Constructor** patterns or XPath expressions.
- **Tag**(\$tag,%properties) specifies properties for the given XML \$tag. Recognized properties include: `autoOpen=>1` indicates that the tag can automatically be opened if needed to create a valid document; `autoClose=>1` indicates that the tag can automatically be closed if needed to create a valid document; `afterOpen=>$code` specifies code to be executed before opening the tag; the code is passed the **Document** being constructed as well as the **Box** (or **Whatsit**) responsible for its creation; `afterClose=>code` similar to `afterOpen`, but executed after closing the element.

#### 4.1.5 Rewriting

The following functions are a bit tricky to use (and describe), but can be quite useful in some circumstances.

- **DefLigature**(\$regexp,%options) applies a regular expression to substitute textnodes after they are closed; the only option is `fontTest=>$code` which restricts the ligature to text nodes where the current font passes `&$code($font)`.
- **DefMathLigature**(\$code) allows replacement of sequences of math nodes. It applies \$code to the current **Document** and each sequence of math nodes encountered in the document; if a replacement should occur, \$code should return a list of the form `($n,$string,%attributes)` in which case, the text content of the first node is replaced by \$string, the given attributes are added, and the following \$n-1 nodes are removed.
- **DefRewrite**(%spec), **DefMathRewrite**(%spec) defines document rewrite rules. These specifications describe what document nodes match:
  - `label=>$label` restricts to nodes contained within an element whose **labels** includes \$label;
  - `scope=>$scope` generalizes label; the most useful form a string like `'section:1.3.2'` where it matches the **section** element whose refnum is 1.3.2;
  - `xpath=>$xpath` selects nodes matching the given XPath;
  - `match=>$tex` selects nodes that look like what processing the T<sub>E</sub>X string \$tex would produce;
  - `regexp=>$regexp` selects text nodes that match the given regular expression.

The following specifications describe what to do with the matched nodes:

- `attributes=>{%attr}` adds the given attributes to the matching nodes;
- `replace=>$tex` replaces the matching nodes with the result of processing the  $\TeX$  string `$tex`.

### 4.1.6 Packages and Options

The following declarations are useful for defining  $\LaTeX$ ML bindings, including option handling. As when defining  $\LaTeX$  packages, the following, if needed at all, need to appear in the order shown.

- **DeclareOption** (`$option`, `$handler`) specifies the handler for `$option` when it is passed to the current package or class. If `$option` is `undef`, it defines the default handler, for options that are otherwise unrecognized. `$handler` can be either a string to be expanded, or a sub which is executed like a primitive.
- **PassOptions** (`$name`, `$type`, `@options`) specifies that the given options should be passed to the package (if `$type` is `sty`) or class (if `$type` is `cls`) `$name`, if it is ever loaded.
- **ProcessOptions** (`%keys`) processes any options that have been passed to the current package or class. If `inorder=>1` is specified, the options will be processed in the order passed to the package (`\ProcessOptions*`); otherwise they will be processed in the declared order (`\ProcessOptions`).
- **ExecuteOptions** (`@options`) executes the handlers for the specific set of options `@options`.
- **RequirePackage** (`$pkgname`, `%keys`) loads the specified package. The keyword options have the following effect: `options=>$options` can provide an explicit array of string specifying the options to pass to the package; `withoptions=>1` means that the options passed to the currently loading class or package should be passed to the requested package; `type=>$ext` specifies the type of the package file (default is `sty`); `raw=>1` specifies that reading the raw style file (eg. `pkg.sty`) is permissible if there is no specific  $\LaTeX$ ML binding (eg. `pkg.sty.ltxml`); `after=>$after` specifies a string or `Tokens` to be expanded after the package has finished loading.
- **LoadClass** (`$classname`, `%keys`) Similar to `RequirePackage`, but loads a class file (`type=>'cls'`).
- **AddToMacro** (`$cstoken`, `$tokens`) a little used utility to add material to the expansion of `$cstoken`, like an `\edef`; typically used to add code to a class or package hook.



### 4.1.7 Miscellaneous

Other useful stuff:

- **RawTeX**(\$texstring) expands and processes the \$texstring; This is typically useful to include definitions copied from a TeX stylefile, when they are appropriate for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>XML, as is. Single-quoting the \$texstring is useful, since it isn't interpolated by Perl, and avoids having to double all the slashes!

## 4.2 latexmlpost Customization

The current postprocessing framework works by passing the document through a sequence of postprocessing filter modules. Each module is responsible for carrying out a specific transformation, augmentation or conversion on the document. In principle, this architecture has the flexibility to employ new filters to perform new or customized conversions. However, the driver, `latexmlpost`, currently provides no convenient means to instantiate and incorporate outside filters, short of developing your own specialized version.

Consequently, we will consider custom postprocessing filters outside the scope of this manual (but of course, you are welcome to explore the code, or contact us with suggestions).

The two areas where customization is most practical is in altering the XSLT transforms used and extending the CSS stylesheets.

### 4.2.1 XSLT

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>XML provides stylesheets for transforming its XML format to XHTML and HTML. These stylesheets are modular with components corresponding to the schema modules. Probably the best strategy for customizing the transform involves making a copy of the standard base stylesheets, `LaTeXML-xhtml.xsl` and `LaTeXML-html.xsl`, found at `installationdir/LaTeXML/style/` — they're short, consisting mainly of sequence of `xsl:include` — and adding your own rules, or including your own modules. The two stylesheets differ primarily in their use of namespaces and handling of math.

Naturally, this requires a familiarity with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>XML's schema (see [F](#)), as well as XSLT and XHTML. See the other stylesheet modules in the same directory as the base stylesheet for guidance.

Conversion to formats other than XHTML are, of course, possible, as well, but are neither supplied nor covered here. How complex the transformation will be depends on the extent that the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>XML schema can be mapped to the desired one, and to what extent L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>XML has lost or hidden information represented in the original document. Again, familiarity with the schema is needed, and the provided XHTML stylesheets may suggest an approach.

### 4.2.2 CSS

CSS stylesheets can be supplied to `latexmlpost` to be included in the generated documents in addition to, or as a replacement for, the standard stylesheet `core.css`. See the directory `installationdir/LaTeXML/style/` for samples.

To best take advantage of this capability so as to design CSS rules with the correct specificity, the following points are helpful:

- $\text{\LaTeX}$ ML converts the  $\text{\TeX}$  to its own schema, with structural elements (like `equation`) getting their own tag; others are transformed to something more generic, such as `note`. In the latter case, a class attribute is often used to distinguish. For example, a `\footnote` generates

```
<note class='footnote'>...
```

whereas an `\endnote` generates

```
<note class='endnote'>...
```

- The provided XSLT stylesheets transform  $\text{\LaTeX}$ ML's schema to XHTML, generating a combined class attribute consisting of any class attributes already present as well as the  $\text{\LaTeX}$ ML tag name. However, there are some variations on the theme. For example,  $\text{\TeX}$ 's `\section` yields a  $\text{\LaTeX}$ ML element `section`, with a `title` element underneath. When transformed to XHTML, the former becomes a `<div class='section'>`, while the latter becomes `<h2 class='section-title'>` (for example, the h-level may vary with the document structure),

## Chapter 5

# Mathematics

There are several issues that have to be dealt with in treating the mathematics. On the one hand, the  $\text{\TeX}$  markup gives a pretty good indication of what the author wants the math to look like, and so we would seem to have a good handle on the conversion to presentation forms. On the other hand, content formats are desirable as well; there are a few, but too few, clues about what the intent of the mathematics is. And in fact, the generation of even Presentation MathML of high quality requires recognizing the mathematical structure, if not the actual semantics. The mathematics processing must therefore preserve the presentational information provided by the author, while inferring, likely with some help, the mathematical content.

From a parsing point of view, the  $\text{\TeX}$ -like processing serves as the lexer, tokenizing the input which  $\text{\LaTeX}$ XML will then parse [perhaps eventually a type-analysis phase will be added]. Of course, there are a few twists. For one, the tokens, represented by `XMTok`, can carry extra attributes such as font and style, but also the name, meaning and grammatical role, with defaults that can be overridden by the author — more on those, in a moment. Another twist is that, although  $\text{\LaTeX}$ 's math markup is not nearly as semantic as we might like, there is considerable semantics and structure in the markup that we can exploit. For example, given a `\frac`, we've already established the numerator and denominator which can be parsed individually, but the fraction as a whole can be directly represented as an application, using `XMApp`, of a fraction operator; the resulting structure can be treated as atomic within its containing expression. This *structure preserving* character greatly simplifies the parsing task and helps reduce misinterpretation.

The parser, invoked by the postprocessor, works only with the top-level lists of lexical tokens, or with those sublists contained in an `XMArg`. The grammar works primarily through the name and grammatical role. The name is given by an attribute, or the content if it is the same. The role (things like ID, FUNCTION, OPERATOR, OPEN, ...) is also given by an attribute, or, if not present, the name is looked up in a document-specific dictionary (`jobname.dict`), or in a default dictionary.

Additional exceptions that need fuller explanation are:

- `Constructors` may wish to create a dual object (`XMDual`) whose children are

the semantic and presentational forms.

- Spacing and similar markup generates `XMHint` elements, which are currently ignored during parsing, but probably shouldn't.

## 5.1 Math Details

$\text{\LaTeX}$ XML processes mathematical material by proceeding through several stages:

- Basic processing of macros, primitives and constructors resulting in an XML document; the math is primarily represented by a sequence of tokens (`XMTok`) or structured items (`XMApp`, `XMDual`) and hints (`XMHint`, which are ignored).
- Document tree rewriting, where rules are applied to modify the document tree. User supplied rules can be used here to clarify the intent of markup used in the document.
- Math Parsing; a grammar based parser is applied, depth first, to each level of the math. In particular, at the top level of each math expression, as well as each subexpression within structured items (these will have been contained in an `XMArg` or `XMWrap` element). This results in an expression tree that will hopefully be an accurate representation of the expression's structure, but may be ambiguous in specifics (eg. what the meaning of a superscript is). The parsing is driven almost entirely by the grammatical `role` assigned to each item.
- *Not yet implemented* a following stage must be developed to resolve the semantic ambiguities by analyzing and augmenting the expression tree.
- Target conversion: from the internal `XM*` representation to MathML or Open-Math.

The `Math` element is a top-level container for any math mode material, serving as the container for various representations of the math including images (through attributes `mathimage`, `width` and `height`), textual (through attributes `tex`, `content-tex` and `text`), MathML and the internal representation itself. The `mode` attribute specifies whether the math should be in display or inline mode.

### 5.1.1 Internal Math Representation

The `XMath` element is the container for the internal representation

The following attributes can appear on all `XM*` elements:

**role** the grammatical role that this element plays

**open, close** parenthese or delimiters that were used to wrap the expression represented by this element.

**argopen, argclose, separators** delimiters on an function or operator (the first element of an `XMApp`) that were used to delimit the arguments of the function. The `separators` is a string of the punctuation characters used to separate arguments.

**xml:id** a unique identifier to allow reference ([XMRef](#)) to this element.

**Math Tags** The following tags are used for the intermediate math representation:

**XMTok** represents a math token. It may contain text for presentation. Additional attributes are:

**name** the name that represents the *meaning* of the token; this overrides the content for identifying the token.

**omcd** the OpenMath content dictionary that the name belongs to.

**font** the font to be used for presenting the content.

**style** ?

**size** ?

**stackscripts** whether scripts should be stacked above/below the item, instead of the usual script position.

**XMAp** represents the generalized application of some function or operator to arguments. The first child element is the operator, the remaining elements are the arguments. Additional attributes:

**name** the name that represents the meaning of the construct as a whole.

**stackscripts** ?

**XMDual** combines representations of the content (the first child) and presentation (the second child), useful when the two structures are not easily related.

**XMHint** represents spacing or other apparent purely presentation material.

**name** names the effect that the hint was intended to achieve.

**style** ?

**XMWrap** serves to assert the expected type or role of a subexpression that may otherwise be difficult to interpret — the parser is more forgiving about these.

**name** ?

**style** ?

**XMArg** serves to wrap individual arguments or subexpressions, created by structured markup, such as `\frac`. These subexpressions can be parsed individually.

**rule** the grammar rule that this subexpression should match.

**XMRef** refers to another subexpression,. This is used to avoid duplicating arguments when constructing an [XMDual](#) to represent a function application, for example. The arguments will be placed in the content branch (wrapped in an [XMArg](#)) while [XMRef](#)'s will be placed in the presentation branch.

**idref** the identifier of the referenced math subexpression.

### 5.1.2 Grammatical Roles

The **role** attempts to capture the syntactic nature of each item. This is used primarily to drive the parsing; the grammar rules are keyed on the **role**, rather than content, of the nodes. The **role** is also used to drive the conversion to presentation markup, especially Presentation MathML, and in fact some values of **role** are only used that way, never appearing explicitly in the grammar.

The following grammatical roles are recognized by the math parser. These values can be specified in the **role** attribute during the initial document construction or by rewrite rules. Although the precedence of operators is loosely described in the following, since the grammar contains various special case productions, no rigidly ordered precedence is given.

**ATOM** a general atomic subexpression.

**ID** a variable-like token, whether scalar or otherwise.

**PUNCT** punctuation.

**APPLYOP** an explicit infix application operator (high precedence).

**RELOP** a relational operator, loosely binding.

**ARROW** an arrow operator (with little semantic significance). treated equivalently to **RELOP**.

**METARELOP** an operator used for relations between relations, with lower precedence.

**ADDOP** an addition operator, precedence between relational and multiplicative operators.

**MULOP** a multiplicative operator, high precedence.

**SUPOP** An operator appearing in a superscript, such as a collection of primes.

**OPEN** an open delimiter.

**CLOSE** a close delimiter.

**MIDDLE** a middle operator used to group items between an **OPEN**, **CLOSE** pair.

**OPERATOR** a general operator; higher precedence than function application. For example, for an operator  $A$ , and function  $F$ ,  $AFx$  would be interpreted as  $(A(F))(x)$ .

**SUMOP** a summation/union operator.

**INTOP** an integral operator.

**LIMITOP** a limiting operator.

**DIFFOP** a differential operator.

**BIGOP** a general operator, but lower precedence, such as a  $P$  preceding an integral to denote the principal value. Note that `SUMOP`, `INTOP`, `LIMITOP`, `DIFFOP` and `BIGOP` are treated equivalently by the grammar, but are distinguished to facilitate (*eventually!*) analyzing the argument structure (eg bound variables and differentials within an integral). **Note** are `SUMOP` and `LIMITOP` significantly different in this sense?

**VERTBAR**

**FUNCTION** a function which (may) apply to following arguments with higher precedence than addition and multiplication, or parenthesized arguments.

**NUMBER** a number.

**POSTSUPERSCRIPT** the usual superscript, where the script is treated as an argument, but the base will be determined by parsing. Note that this is not necessarily assumed to be a power. Very high precedence.

**POSTSUBSCRIPT** Similar to `POSTSUPERSCRIPT` for subscripts.

**FLOATINGSUPERSCRIPT** A special case for a superscript on an empty base, ie.  $\{\}^{\{x\}}$ . It is often used to place a pre-superscript or for non-math uses (eg.  $10\$\{\}^{\{th\}}$ ).

**FLOATINGSUBSCRIPT** Similar to `POSTSUPERSCRIPT` for subscripts.

**POSTFIX** for a postfix operator

**UNKNOWN** an unknown expression. This is the default for token elements, and generates a warning if the unknown seems to be used as a function.

The following roles are not used in the grammar, but are used to capture the presentation style:

**STACKED** corresponds to stacked structures, such as `\atop`, and the presentation of binomial coefficients.





## Chapter 6

# Localization

In this chapter, a few issues relating to various national or cultural styles, languages or text encodings, which we'll refer to collectively as 'localization', are briefly discussed.

### 6.1 Numbering

Generally when titles and captions are formatted or when equations are numbered and when they are referred to in a cross reference or table of contents, text consisting of some combination of the raw title or caption text, a reference number and a type name (eg. 'Chapter') or symbol (eg. §) is composed and used. The exact compositions that is used at each level can depend on language, culture, the subject matter as well as both journal and individual style preferences.  $\text{\LaTeX}$  has evolved to accommodate many of these styles and  $\text{\LaTeX}$ ML attempts to follow that lead, while preserve its options (the demands of extensively hyper-linked online material sometimes seems to demand more options and flexibility than traditional print formatting).

For example, the various macros `\chaptername`, `\partname`, `\refname`, etc. are respected and used. Likewise, the various counters and formatters such as `\theequation` are supported.

$\text{\LaTeX}$ 's mechanism for formatting caption tags, `\fnum@figure` and `\fnum@table`, is extended to cover all cases; thus if you define `\fnum@type`, (where *type* is `chapter`, `section`, `subsection`, etc.) it will be used to format the reference number and/or type name for instances of that *type*. The macro `\fnum@toc@type` is used when formatting numbers for tables of contents.

Alternatively, you can define a macro `\format@title@type` that will be used format the whole title including reference number and type as desired; it takes a single argument, the title text. The macro `\format@toctitle@type` is used for the formatting a (typically) short form use in tables of contents.

## 6.2 Input Encodings

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X<sub>ML</sub> supports the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X mechanism for handling non-ASCII encodings of the input T<sub>E</sub>X sources: using the `inputenc` package. The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X<sub>ML</sub> binding of `inputenc` loads the encoding definition (generally with extension `def`) directly from the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X distribution (which are generally well-enough behaved to be easily processed). These encoding definitions make the upper 128 code points (of 8 bit) active and define T<sub>E</sub>X macros to handle them.

Using the commandline option `--inputencoding=utf8` to `latexml` allows processing of sources encoded as utf8, without any special packages loaded. [future work will make L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X<sub>ML</sub> compatible with xetex]

## 6.3 Output Encodings

At some level, as far as T<sub>E</sub>X is concerned, what you type ends up pointing into a font that causes some blob of ink to be printed. This mechanism is used to print a unique mathematical operator, say ‘subset of and not equals’. It is also used to print greek when you seemed to have been typing ASCII!

So, we must accomodate that mechanism, as well. At the stage when character tokens are digested to create boxes in the current font, a font encoding table (a `FontMap`) is consulted to map the token’s text (viewed as an index into the table) to Unicode. The declaration `DeclareFontMap` is used to associate a `FontMap` with an encoding name, or font.

Note that this mapping is only used for text originating from the source document; The text within Constructor’s XML pattern is used *without* any such font conversion.

## 6.4 Babel

The `babel` package for supporting multiple languages by redefining various internal bits of text to replace, eg. “Chapter” by “Kapital” and by defining various shorthand mechanisms to make it easy to type the extra non-latin characters and glyphs used by those languages. Each supported language or dialect has a module which is loaded to provide the needed definitions.

To the extent: that L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X<sub>ML</sub>’s input and output encoding handling is sufficient; that its processing of raw T<sub>E</sub>X is good enough; and that it proceeds through the appropriate L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X internals, L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X<sub>ML</sub> should be able to support `babel` and arbitrary languages by reading in the raw T<sub>E</sub>X implementation of the language module from the T<sub>E</sub>X distribution itself.

At least, that is the strategy that we use.

## Chapter 7

# Alignments

There are several situations where  $\text{\TeX}$  stacks or aligns a number of objects into a one or two dimensional grids. In most cases, these are built upon low-level primitives, like `\halign`, and so share characteristics: using `&` to separate alignment columns; either `\\` or `\cr` to separate rows. Yet, there are many different markup patterns and environments used for quite different purposes from tabular text to math arrays to composing symbols and so it is worth recognizing the intended semantics in each case, while still processing them as  $\text{\TeX}$  would.

In this chapter, we will describe some of the special complications presented by alignments and the strategies used to infer and represent the appropriate semantic structures, particularly for math.

### 7.1 $\text{\TeX}$ Alignments

**NOTE** This section needs to be written.

Many utilities for setting up and processing alignments are defined in `TeX.pool` with support from the module `LaTeXML::Util::Alignment`. Typically, one binds a set of control sequences specially for the alignment environment or structure encountered, particularly for `&` and `\\`. An alignment object is created which records information about each row and cell that was processed, such as width, alignment, span, etc. Then the alignment is converted to XML by specifying what tag wraps the entire alignment, each row and each cell.

The content of alignments is being expanded before the column and row markers are recognized; this allows more flexibility in defining markup since row and column markers can be hidden in macros, but it also means that simple means, such as delimited parameter lists, to parse the structure won't work.

### 7.2 Tabular Header Heuristics

*To be written*

### 7.3 Math Forks

There are several constructs for aligning mathematics in  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , and common packages. Here we are concerned with the large scale alignments where one or more equations are displayed in a grid, such as `eqnarray`, in standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , and a suite of constructs of the `amsmath` packages. The arrangements are worth preserving as they often convey important information to the reader by the grouping, or by drawing attention to similarities or differences in the formula. At the same time, the individual fragments within the grid cells often have little ‘meaning’ on their own: it is subsequences of these fragments that represent the logical mathematical objects or formula. Thus, we would also like to recognize those sequences and synthesize complete formula for use in content-oriented services. We therefore have to devise an XML structure to represent this duality, as well as developing strategies for inferring and rearranging the mathematics as it was authored into the desired form.

The needed structure shares some characteristics with `XMDual`, which needs to be described, but needs to reside at the document level, containing several, possibly numbered, equations each of which provide two views. Additional objects, such as textual insertions (such as `amsmath`’s `\intertext`), must also be accommodated.

The following XML is used to represent these structures:

```
<ltx:equationgroup>
  <ltx:equation>
    <ltx:MathFork>
      <ltx:Math>logical math here</ltx:Math>
      <ltx:MathBranch>
        <ltx:td><ltx:Math>cell math</ltx:Math></ltx:td>...
        or
        <ltx:tr><ltx:td><ltx:Math>...
      </ltx:MathBranch>
    </ltx:MathFork>
  </ltx:equation>
  <ltx:text>inter-text</ltx:text>
  ...more text or equations
</ltx:equationgroup>
```

Typically, the contents of the `MathBranch` will be a sequence of `td`, each containing an `Math`, or of `tr`, each containing sequence of such `td`. This structure can thus represent both `eqnarray` where a logical equation consists of one or more complete rows, as well as AMS’ `aligned` where equations consist of pairs of columns. The XSLT transformation that converts to end formats recognizes which case and lays out appropriately.

In most cases, the material that will yield a `MathFork` is given as a set of partial math expressions representing rows and/or columns; these must be concatenated (and parsed) to form the composite logical expression.

Any ID’s within the expressions (and references to them) must be modified to avoid duplicate ids. Moreover, a useful application associates the displayed tokens from the aligned presentation of the `MathBranch` with the presumably semantic tokens in the

logical content of the main branch of the [MathFork](#). Thus, we desire that the IDs in the two branches to have a known relationship; in particular, those in the branch should have `.fork1` appended.

## 7.4 eqnarray

The `eqnarray` environment seems intended to represent one or more equations, but each equation can be continued with additional right-hand-sides (by omitting the 1st column), or the RHS itself can be continued on multiple lines by omitting the 1st two columns on a row. With our goal of constructing well-structured mathematics, this gives us a fun little puzzle to sort out. However, being essentially the only structure for aligning mathematical stuff in standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , `eqnarray` tended to be stretched into various other use cases; aligning numbered equations with bits of text on the side, for example. We therefore have some work to do to guess what the intent is.

The strategy used for `eqnarray` is process the material as an alignment in math mode and convert initially to the following XML structure:

```
<ltx:equationgroup>
  <ltx:equation>
    <ltx:_Capture_>
      <ltx:Math><ltx:XMath>column math here</ltx:XMath></ltx:Math>
    </ltx:_Capture_>
    ...
  </ltx:equation>
  ...
</ltx:equationgroup>
```

The results are then studied to recognize the patterns of empty columns so that the rows can be regrouped into logical equations. [MathFork](#) structures are used to contain those logical equations while preserving the layout in the [MathBranch](#).

**NOTE** We need to deal better with the cases that have more rows numbered than we would like.

## 7.5 AMS Alignments

The AMS math packages define a number of useful math alignment structures. These have been well thought out and designed with particular logical structures in mind, as well as the layout. Thus these environments are less often abused than is `eqnarray`. In this section, we list the environments, their expected use case and describe the strategy used for converting them.

*To be done* Describe alternates for `equation` and things inside equations; Describe single vs multiple logical equations. (and started variants)

This list outlines the *intended* use of the AMS alignment environments The following constructs are intended as top-level environments, used like `equation`.

Several of the constructs are used in place of a top-level `equation` and represent one or more logical equations. The following describes the intended usage, as a guide to understanding the implementation code (or its limitations!)

- `align, flalign, alignat, xalignat`: Each row may be numbered; has even number of columns; Each pair of columns, aligned right then left, represents a logical equation; Note that the documentation suggests that annotative text can be added by putting `\text{}` in a column followed by an empty column.
- `gather`: Each row is a single centered column representing an equation.
- `multline`: This environment represents a single equation broken to multiple lines; the lines are aligned left, center (repeated) and finally, right. *alignment not yet implemented*

The following environments are used *within* an equation (or similar) environment and thus do not generate [MathFork](#) structures. Moreover, except for `aligned`, their semantic intent is less clear. The preservation of the alignment have not yet been implemented; they, presumably would yeiled an [XMDual](#).

- `split`
- `gathered`
- `aligned, alignedat`

Note that the case of a single equation containing a single `aligned` is transformed into and treated equivalently to a top-level `align`.

## Chapter 8

# ToDo

Lots...!

- Many useful  $\LaTeX$  packages have not been implemented, and those that are aren't necessarily complete.

Contributed bindings are, of course, welcome!

- Low-level  $\TeX$  capabilities, such as text modes (eg. vertical, horizontal), box details like width and depth, as well as fonts, aren't mimicked faithfully, although it isn't clear how much can be done at the 'semantic' level.
- a richer math grammar, or more flexible parsing engine, better inferencing of math structure, better inferencing of math *meaning*...and thus better Content MathML and OpenMath support!
- Could be faster.
- Easier customization of the document schema, XSLT stylesheets.
- ...um, ...*documentation*!





# Acknowledgements

Thanks to the DLMF project and its Editors — Frank Olver, Dan Lozier, Ron Boisvert, and Charles Clark — for providing the motivation and opportunity to pursue this.

Thanks to the arXMLiv project, in particular Michael Kohlhase and Heinrich Stamerjohanns, for providing a rich testbed and testing framework to exercise the system. Additionally, thanks to Ioan Sucan, Deyan Ginev, Catalin David and Silviu Oprea for testing help and for implementing additional packages.



# Appendix A

## Command Documentation

### A.1 latexml

Transforms a TeX/LaTeX file into XML.

#### A.1.1 Synopsis

`latexml [options] texfile`

Options:

<code>--destination=file</code>	specifies destination file (default stdout).
<code>--output=file</code>	[obsolete synonym for <code>--destination</code> ]
<code>--preload=module</code>	requests loading of an optional module; can be repeated
<code>--preamble=file</code>	specifies a preamble file which will effectively be prepended to the main file.
<code>--postamble=file</code>	specifies a postamble file which will effectively be appended to the main file.
<code>--includestyles</code>	allows latexml to load raw *.sty file; by default it avoids this.
<code>--path=dir</code>	adds dir to the paths searched for files, modules, etc;
<code>--documentid=id</code>	assign an id to the document root.
<code>--quiet</code>	suppress messages (can repeat)
<code>--verbose</code>	more informative output (can repeat)
<code>--strict</code>	makes latexml less forgiving of errors
<code>--bibtex</code>	processes the file as a BibTeX bibliography.
<code>--xml</code>	requests xml output (default).
<code>--tex</code>	requests TeX output after expansion.
<code>--box</code>	requests box output after expansion and digestion.
<code>--noparse</code>	suppresses parsing math

```

--nocomments      omit comments from the output
--inputencoding=enc specify the input encoding.
--VERSION         show version number.
--debug=package   enables debugging output for the named
                  package
--help            shows this help message.

```

If *texfile* is '-', latexml reads the TeX source from standard input. If *texfile* has an explicit extension of *.bib*, it is processed as a BibTeX bibliography.

### A.1.2 Options & Arguments

#### **--destination=*file***

Specifies the destination file; by default the XML is written to stdout.

#### **--preload=*module***

Requests the loading of an optional module or package. This may be useful if the TeX code does not specifically require the module (eg. through input or usepackage). For example, use `--preload=LaTeX.pool` to force LaTeX mode.

#### **--preamble=*file*, --postamble=*file***

Specifies a file whose contents will effectively be prepended or appended to the main document file's content. This can be useful when processing TeX fragments, in which case the preamble would contain documentclass and begindocument control sequences. This option is not used when processing BibTeX files.

#### **--includestyles**

This optional allows processing of style files (files with extensions *sty*, *cls*, *clo*, *cnf*). By default, these files are ignored unless a latexml implementation of them is found (with an extension of *ltxml*).

These style files generally fall into two classes: Those that merely affect document style are ignorable in the XML. Others define new markup and document structure, often using deeper LaTeX macros to achieve their ends. Although the omission will lead to other errors (missing macro definitions), it is unlikely that processing the TeX code in the style file will lead to a correct document.

#### **--path=*dir***

Add *dir* to the search paths used when searching for files, modules, style files, etc; somewhat like TEXINPUTS. This option can be repeated.

#### **--documentid=*id***

Assigns an ID to the root element of the XML document. This ID is generally inherited as the prefix of ID's on all other elements within the document. This is useful when constructing a site of multiple documents so that all nodes have unique IDs.

**--quiet**

Reduces the verbosity of output during processing, used twice is pretty silent.

**--verbose**

Increases the verbosity of output during processing, used twice is pretty chatty.  
Can be useful for getting more details when errors occur.

**--strict**

Specifies a strict processing mode. By default, undefined control sequences and invalid document constructs (that violate the DTD) give warning messages, but attempt to continue processing. Using `--strict` makes them generate fatal errors.

**--bibtex**

Forces latexml to treat the file as a BibTeX bibliography. Note that the timing is slightly different than the usual case with BibTeX and LaTeX. In the latter case, BibTeX simply selects and formats a subset of the bibliographic entries; the actual TeX expansion is carried out when the result is included in a LaTeX document. In contrast, latexml processes and expands the entire bibliography; the selection of entries is done during postprocessing. This also means that any packages that define macros used in the bibliography must be specified using the `--preload` option.

**--xml**

Requests XML output; this is the default.

**--tex**

Requests TeX output for debugging purposes; processing is only carried out through expansion and digestion. This may not be quite valid TeX, since Unicode may be introduced.

**--box**

Requests Box output for debugging purposes; processing is carried out through expansion and digestions, and the result is printed.

**--nocomments**

Normally latexml preserves comments from the source file, and adds a comment every 25 lines as an aid in tracking the source. The option `--nocomments` discards such comments.

**--inputencoding=*encoding***

Specify the input encoding, eg. `--inputencoding=iso-8859-1`. The encoding must be one known to Perl's Encode package. Note that this only enables the translation of the input bytes to UTF-8 used internally by LaTeXML, but does not affect catcodes. It is usually better to use LaTeX's inputenc package. Note that this does not affect the output encoding, which is always UTF-8.

**--VERSION**

Shows the version number of the LaTeXML package..

**--debug=*package***

Enables debugging output for the named package. The package is given without the leading LaTeXML::.

**--help**

Shows this help message.

**A.1.3 See also**

[latexmlpost](#), [latexmlmath](#), [LaTeXML](#)

## A.2 latexmlpost

Postprocesses an xml file generated by latexml to perform common tasks, such as convert math to images and processing graphics inclusions for the web.

### A.2.1 Synopsis

latexmlpost [options] *xmlfile*

Options:

--verbose	shows progress during processing.
--VERSION	show version number.
--help	shows help message.
--sourcedirectory=sourcedir	specifies directory of the original source TeX file.
--validate, --novalidate	Enables (the default) or disables validation of the source xml.
--format=html html5 xhtml+xml	requests the output format.
--destination=file	specifies output file (and directory).
--omitdoctype	omits the Doctype declaration,
--noomitdoctype	disables the omission (the default)
--numbersections	enables (the default) the inclusion of section numbers in titles and crossrefs.
--nonumbersections	disables the above
--stylesheet=xslfile	requests the XSL transform using the given xslfile as stylesheet.
--css=cssfile	adds a css stylesheet to html/html5/xhtml (can be repeated)
--nodefaultcss	disables the default css stylesheet
--javascript=jsfile	adds a link to a javascript file into html/html5/xhtml (can be repeated)
--split	requests splitting each document
--nosplit	disables the above (default)
--splitat	specifies level to split the document
--splitpath=xpath	specifies xpath expression for splitting (default is section-like, if splitting)
--splitnaming=(id idrelative label labelrelative)	specifies how to name split files (def. idrelative).
--scan	scans documents to extract ids, labels, section titles, etc. (default)
--noscan	disables the above
--crossref	fills in crossreferences (default)
--nocrossref	disables the above
--urlstyle=(server negotiated file)	format to use for urls (default server).
--navigationtoc=(context none)	generates a table of contents innavbar

<code>--index</code>	requests filling in the index (default)
<code>--noindex</code>	disables the above
<code>--splitindex</code>	Splits the index into pages per initial.
<code>--nosplitindex</code>	disables the above (default)
<code>--permutedindex</code>	permutes index phrases in the index
<code>--nopermutedindex</code>	disables the above (default)
<code>--bibliography=file</code>	specifies a bibliography file
<code>--splitbibliography</code>	splits the bibliography into pages per initial.
<code>--nosplitbibliography</code>	disables the above (default)
<code>--prescan</code>	carries out only the split (if enabled) and scan, storing cross-referencing data in dbfile
	(default is complete processing)
<code>--dbfile=dbfile</code>	specifies file to store crossreferences
<code>--sitedirectory=dir</code>	specifies the base directory of the site
<code>--mathimages</code>	converts math to images
	(default for html format)
<code>--nomathimages</code>	disables the above
<code>--mathimagemagnification=mag</code>	specifies magnification factor
<code>--presentationmathml</code>	converts math to Presentation MathML
	(default for xhtml & html5 formats)
<code>--pmml</code>	alias for <code>--presentationmathml</code>
<code>--nopresentationmathml</code>	disables the above
<code>--linelength=n</code>	formats presentation mathml to a linelength max of n characters
<code>--contentmathml</code>	converts math to Content MathML
<code>--nocontentmathml</code>	disables the above (default)
<code>--cmml</code>	alias for <code>--contentmathml</code>
<code>--openmath</code>	converts math to OpenMath
<code>--noopenmath</code>	disables the above (default)
<code>--om</code>	alias for <code>--openmath</code>
<code>--keepXMath</code>	preserves the intermediate XMath representation (default is to remove)
<code>--graphicimages</code>	converts graphics to images (default)
<code>--nographicimages</code>	disables the above
<code>--graphicsmap=type.type</code>	specifies a graphics file mapping
<code>--pictureimages</code>	converts picture environments to images (default)
<code>--nopictureimages</code>	disables the above
<code>--svg</code>	converts picture environments to SVG
<code>--nosvg</code>	disables the above (default)

If *xmlfile* is '-', latexmlpost reads the XML from standard input.



## A.2.2 Options & Arguments

### General Options

**--verbose**

Requests informative output as processing proceeds. Can be repeated to increase the amount of information.

**--VERSION**

Shows the version number of the LaTeXML package..

**--help**

Shows this help message.

### Source Options

**--sourcedirectory=*source***

Specifies the directory where the original latex source is located. Unless latexml-post is run from that directory, or it can be determined from the xml filename, it may be necessary to specify this option in order to find graphics and style files.

**--validate, --novalidate**

Enables (or disables) the validation of the source XML document (the default).

### Format Options

**--format=(html|html5|xhtml+xml)**

Specifies the output format for post processing. `html` format converts the material to html and the mathematics to png images. `xhtml` format converts to xhtml and uses presentation MathML (after attempting to parse the mathematics) for representing the math. `html5` similarly converts math to presentation MathML. In these cases, any graphics will be converted to web-friendly formats and/or copied to the destination directory. By default, `xml`, the output is left in LaTeXML's xml, but the math is parsed and converted to presentation MathML. For `html`, `html5` and `xhtml`, a default stylesheet is provided, but see the `--stylesheet` option.

**--destination=*destination***

Specifies the destination file and directory. The directory is needed for mathimages and graphics processing.

**--omitdoctype, --noomitdoctype**

Omits (or includes) the document type declaration. The default is to include it if the document model was based on a DTD.

**--numbersections, --nonumbersections**

Includes (default), or disables the inclusion of section, equation, etc, numbers in the formatted document and crossreference links.

**--stylesheet=*xslfile***

Requests the XSL transformation of the document using the given *xslfile* as stylesheet. If the stylesheet is omitted, a ‘standard’ one appropriate for the format (html, html5 or xhtml) will be used.

**--css=*cssfile***

Adds *cssfile* as a css stylesheet to be used in the transformed html/html5/xhtml. Multiple stylesheets can be used; they are included in the html in the order given, following the default `core.css` (unless `--nodefaultcss`). The stylesheet is copied to the destination directory, unless it is an absolute url.

Some stylesheets included in the distribution are `--css=navbar-left` Puts a navigation bar on the left. (default omits navbar) `--css=navbar-right` Puts a navigation bar on the right. `--css=theme-blue` A blue coloring theme for headings. `--css=amsart` A style suitable for journal articles.

**--nodefaultcss**

Disables the inclusion of the default `core.css` stylesheet.

**--javascript=*jsfile***

Includes a link to the javascript file *jsfile*, to be used in the transformed html/html5/xhtml. Multiple javascript files can be included; they are linked in the html in the order given. The javascript file is copied to the destination directory, unless it is an absolute url.

**--icon=*iconfile***

Copies *iconfile* to the destination directory and sets up the linkage in the transformed html/html5/xhtml to use that as the “favicon”.

**--timestamp=*timestamp***

Provides a timestamp (typically a time and date) to be embedded in the comments by the stock XSLT stylesheets. If you don’t supply a timestamp, the current time and date will be used. (You can use `--timestamp=0` to omit the timestamp).

**Site & Crossreferencing Options****--split, --nosplit**

Enables or disables (default) the splitting of documents into multiple ‘pages’. If enabled, the the document will be split into sections, bibliography, index and appendices (if any) by default, unless `--splitpath` is specified.

**--splitat=unit**

Specifies what level of the document to split at. Should be one of `chapter`, `section` (the default), `subsection` or `subsubsection`. For more control, see `--splitpath`.

**--splitpath=xpath**

Specifies an XPath expression to select nodes that will generate separate pages. The default splitpath is `//ltx:section |//ltx:bibliography |//ltx:appendix |//ltx:index`

Specifying `--splitpath="//ltx:section |//ltx:subsection |//ltx:bibliography |//ltx:appendix |//ltx:index"`

would split the document at subsections as well as sections.

**--splitnaming=(id|idrelative|label|labelrelative)**

Specifies how to name the files for subdocuments created by splitting. The values `id` and `label` simply use the id or label of the subdocument's root node for it's filename. `idrelative` and `labelrelative` use the portion of the id or label that follows the parent document's id or label. Furthermore, to impose structure and uniqueness, if a split document has children that are also split, that document (and it's children) will be in a separate subdirectory with the name `index`.

**--scan, --noscan**

Enables (default) or disables the scanning of documents for ids, labels, references, indexmarks, etc, for use in filling in refs, cites, index and so on. It may be useful to disable when generating documents not based on the LaTeXML doctype.

**--crossref, --nocrossref**

Enables (default) or disables the filling in of references, hrefs, etc based on a previous scan (either from `--scan`, or `--dbfile`) It may be useful to disable when generating documents not based on the LaTeXML doctype.

**--urlstyle=(server|negotiated|file)**

This option determines the way that URLs within the documents are formatted, depending on the way they are intended to be served. The default, `server`, eliminates unnecessary trailing `index.html`. With `negotiated`, the trailing file extension (typically `html` or `xhtml`) are eliminated. The scheme `file` preserves complete (but relative) urls so that the site can be browsed as files without any server.

**--navigationtoc=(context|none)**

Generates a table of contents in the navigation bar; default is `none`. The 'context' style of TOC, is somewhat verbose and reveals more detail near the current page; it is most suitable for navigation bars placed on the left or right. Other styles of TOC should be developed and added here, such as a short form.

**--index, --noindex**

Enables (default) or disables the generation of an index from indexmarks embedded within the document. Enabling this has no effect unless there is an index element in the document (generated by `\printindex`).

**--splitindex, --nosplitindex**

Enables or disables (default) the splitting of generated indexes into separate pages per initial letter.

**--bibliography=pathname**

Specifies a bibliography file generated from a BibTeX file and used to fill in a bibliography element. Hand-written bibliographies placed in a `thebibliography` environment do not need this processing. Enabling this has no effect unless there is an bibliography element in the document (generated by `\bibliography`).

Note that this option provides the bibliography to be used to fill in the bibliography element (generated by `\bibliography`); `latexmlpost` does not (currently) directly process and format such a bibliography.

**--splitbibliography, --nosplitbibliography**

Enables or disables (default) the splitting of generated bibliographies into separate pages per initial letter.

**--prescan**

By default `latexmlpost` processes a single document into one (or more; see `--split`) destination files in a single pass. When generating a complicated site consisting of several documents it may be advantageous to first scan through the documents to extract and store (in `dbfile`) cross-referencing data (such as ids, titles, urls, and so on). A later pass then has complete information allowing all documents to reference each other, and also constructs an index and bibliography that reflects the entire document set. The same effect (though less efficient) can be achieved by running `latexmlpost` twice, provided a `dbfile` is specified.

**--dbfile=file**

Specifies a filename to use for the crossreferencing data when using two-pass processing. This file may reside in the intermediate destination directory.

**--sitedirectory=dir**

Specifies the base directory of the overall web site. Pathnames in the database are stored in a form relative to this directory to make it more portable.

**Math Options**

These options specify how math should be converted into other formats. Multiple formats can be requested; how they will be combined depends on the format and other options.

**--mathimages, --nomathimages**

Requests or disables the conversion of math to images. Conversion is the default for html format.

**--mathimagemagnification=*factor***

Specifies the magnification used for math images, if they are made. Default is 1.75.

**--presentationmathml, --nopresentationmathml**

Requests or disables conversion of math to Presentation MathML. Conversion is the default for xhtml and html5 formats.

**--linelength=*number***

(Experimental) Line-breaks the generated Presentation MathML so that it is no longer than *number* ‘characters’.

**--plane1**

Converts the content of Presentation MathML token elements to the appropriate Unicode Plane-1 codepoints according to the selected font, when applicable (the default).

**--hackplane1**

Converts the content of Presentation MathML token elements to the appropriate Unicode Plane-1 codepoints according to the selected font, but only for the mathvariants double-struck, fraktur and script. This gives support for current (as of August 2009) versions of Firefox and MathPlayer, provided a sufficient set of fonts is available (eg. STIX).

**--contentmathml, --nocontentmathml**

Requests or disables conversion of math to Content MathML. Conversion is disabled by default. **Note** that this conversion is only partially implemented.

**--openmath**

Requests or disables conversion of math to OpenMath. Conversion is disabled by default. **Note** that this conversion is only partially implemented.

**--keepXMath**

By default, when any of the MathML or OpenMath conversions are used, the intermediate math representation will be removed; this option preserves it; it will be used as secondary parallel markup, when it follows the options for other math representations.

## Graphics Options

### **--graphicimages, --nographicimages**

Enables (default) or disables the conversion of graphics to web-appropriate format (png).

### **--graphicsmap=sourcetype.desttype**

Specifies a mapping of graphics file types. Typically, graphics elements specify a graphics file that will be converted to a more appropriate file target format; for example, postscript files used for graphics with LaTeX will be converted to png format for use on the web. As with LaTeX, when a graphics file is specified without a file type, the system will search for the most appropriate target type file. The default settings of the Graphics module search for pdf, gif, jpg or jpeg files, which it copies unchanged, or ps, eps and pdf files, which are converted to png.

When this option is used, it overrides the defaults and provides a mapping of *sourcetype* to *desttype*. The option can be repeated to provide several mappings, with the earlier formats preferred. If the *desttype* is omitted, it specifies copying files of type *sourcetype*, unchanged.

### **--pictureimages, --nopictureimages**

Enables (default) or disables the conversion of picture environments and pstricks material into images.

### **--svg, --nosvg**

Enables or disables (default) the conversion of picture environments and pstricks material to SVG.

## A.2.3 See also

[latexml](#), [latexmlmath](#), [LaTeXML](#)

## A.3 latexmlmath

Transforms a TeX/LaTeX math expression into various formats.

### A.3.1 Synopsis

`latexmlmath [options] texmath`

Options:

<code>--mathimage=file</code>	converts to image in file
<code>--magnification=mag</code>	specifies magnification factor
<code>--presentationmathml=file</code>	converts to Presentation MathML
<code>--pmml=file</code>	alias for <code>--presentationmathml</code>
<code>--linelength=n</code>	do linewrapping of pMML
<code>--contentmathml=file</code>	convert to Content MathML
<code>--cmml=file</code>	alias for <code>--contentmathml</code>
<code>--openmath=file</code>	convert to OpenMath
<code>--om=file</code>	alias for <code>--openmath</code>
<code>--XMath=file</code>	convert to LaTeXXML's internal format
<code>--noparse</code>	disables parsing of math (not useful for cMML or openmath)
<code>--preload=file</code>	loads a style file.
<code>--includestyles</code>	allows processing raw *.sty files (normally it avoids this)
<code>--path=dir</code>	adds a search path for style files.
<code>--quiet</code>	reduces verbosity (can be repeated)
<code>--verbose</code>	increases verbosity (can be repeated)
<code>--strict</code>	be more strict about errors.
<code>--documentid=id</code>	assign an id to the document root.
<code>--debug=package</code>	enables debugging output for the named package
<code>--VERSION</code>	show version number and exit.
<code>--help</code>	shows this help message.
<code>--</code>	ends options

If *texmath* is '-', `latexmlmath` reads the TeX from standard input. If any of the output files are '-', the result is printed on standard output.

#### Input notes

Note that, unless you are reading *texmath* from standard input, the *texmath* string will be processed by whatever shell you are using before `latexmlmath` even sees it. This means that many so-called meta characters, such as backslash and star, may confuse the shell or be changed. Consequently, you will need to quote and/or slashify the input appropriately. Most particularly, `\` will need to be doubled to `\\` for `latexmlmath` to see it as a control sequence.

Using `--` to explicitly end the option list is useful for cases when the math starts with a minus (and would otherwise be interpreted as an option, probably an unrecognized one). Alternatively, wrapping the *texmath* with `{}` will hide the minus.

Simple examples: `latexmlmath \frac{-b\pm\sqrt{b^2-4ac}}{2a} echo "\frac{-b\pm\sqrt{b^2-4ac}}{2a}" |latexmlmath -pmml=quad.mml -`

### A.3.2 Options & Arguments

#### Conversion Options

These options specify what formats the math should be converted to. In each case, the destination file is given. Except for `mathimage`, the file can be given as `'-'`, in which case the result is printed to standard output.

If no conversion option is specified, the default is to output presentation MathML to standard output.

##### **`--mathimage=file`**

Requests conversion to png images.

##### **`--magnification=factor`**

Specifies the magnification used for math image. Default is 1.75.

##### **`--presentationmathml=file`**

Requests conversion to Presentation MathML.

##### **`--linelength=number`**

(Experimental) Line-breaks the generated Presentation MathML so that it is no longer than *number* ‘characters’.

##### **`--plane1`**

Converts the content of Presentation MathML token elements to the appropriate Unicode Plane-1 codepoints according to the selected font, when applicable.

##### **`--hackplane1`**

Converts the content of Presentation MathML token elements to the appropriate Unicode Plane-1 codepoints according to the selected font, but only for the mathvariants double-struck, fraktur and script. This gives support for current (as of August 2009) versions of Firefox and MathPlayer, provided a sufficient set of fonts is available (eg. STIX).

##### **`--contentmathml=file`**

Requests conversion to Content MathML. **Note** that this conversion is only partially implemented.

##### **`--openmath=file`**

Requests conversion to OpenMath. **Note** that this conversion is only partially implemented.



**--XMath=file**

Requests conversion to LaTeXXML's internal format.

**A.3.3 Other Options****--preload=module**

Requests the loading of an optional module or package. This may be useful if the TeX code does not specifically require the module (eg. through input or usepackage). For example, use `--preload=LaTeX.pool` to force LaTeX mode.

**--includestyles**

This optional allows processing of style files (files with extensions `sty`, `cls`, `clo`, `cnf`). By default, these files are ignored unless a latexml implementation of them is found (with an extension of `ltxml`).

These style files generally fall into two classes: Those that merely affect document style are ignorable in the XML. Others define new markup and document structure, often using deeper LaTeX macros to achieve their ends. Although the omission will lead to other errors (missing macro definitions), it is unlikely that processing the TeX code in the style file will lead to a correct document.

**--path=dir**

Add *dir* to the search paths used when searching for files, modules, style files, etc; somewhat like TEXINPUTS. This option can be repeated.

**--documentid=id**

Assigns an ID to the root element of the XML document. This ID is generally inherited as the prefix of ID's on all other elements within the document. This is useful when constructing a site of multiple documents so that all nodes have unique IDs.

**--quiet**

Reduces the verbosity of output during processing, used twice is pretty silent.

**--verbose**

Increases the verbosity of output during processing, used twice is pretty chatty. Can be useful for getting more details when errors occur.

**--strict**

Specifies a strict processing mode. By default, undefined control sequences and invalid document constructs (that violate the DTD) give warning messages, but attempt to continue processing. Using `--strict` makes them generate fatal errors.

**--VERSION**

Shows the version number of the LaTeXXML package..

**`--debug=package`**

Enables debugging output for the named package. The package is given without the leading LaTeXML::.

**`--help`**

Shows this help message.

**A.3.4 BUGS**

This program runs much slower than would seem justified. This is a result of the relatively slow initialization including loading TeX and LaTeX macros and the schema. Normally, this cost would be amortized over large documents, whereas, in this case, we're processing a single math expression.

**A.3.5 See also**

[latexml](#), [latexmlpost](#), [LaTeXML](#)

## Appendix B

# Implemented Bindings

Bindings for the following classes and packages are supplied with the distribution:

**classes:** JHEP, JHEP2, JHEP3, aa, aastex, amsart, amsbook, amsproc, article, book, elsart, elsarticle, emulateapj, gen-j-l, gen-m-l, gen-p-l, iopart, llncs, mn, mn2e, report, revtex, revtex4, slides, svjour, svmult

**packages:** a4, a4wide, aasms, aaspp, aastex, acronym, ae, alltt, amsbsy, amscd, ams-fonts, amsmath, amsopn, amsppt, amsrefs, amssymb, amstex, amstext, amsthm, amsxtra, array, avant, babel, bbm, beton, bm, bookman, caption, ccfonts, chancery, charter, cite, cmbright, color, comment, concmath, courier, dcolumn, elsart, emulateapj, enumerate, epsf, epsfig, epstopdf, eucal, eufrak, euler, eulervm, eu-rosym, euscript, exscale, fixltx2e, float, floatfig, floatflt, fontenc, fourier, graphics, graphicx, helvet, here, hhline, html, hyperref, ifpdf, inputenc, iopams, key-val, latexml, latexsym, listings, longtable, lscape, luximono, makeidx, math-pazo, mathpple, mathptm, mathptmx, multicol, multido, multirow, natbib, new-cent, palatino, paralist, pifont, psfig, pspicture, pst-grad, pst-node, pstricks, px-fonts, revsymb, revtex, revtex4, rsfs, scalefnt, subfigure, supertabular, tabularx, textcomp, times, tocbibind, txfonts, upgreek, upref, url, utopia, wrapfig, xspace, yfonts



## Appendix C

# Core Module Documentation

### C.1 LaTeXML

Transforms TeX into XML.

#### C.1.1 Synopsis

```
use LaTeXML;  
my $latexml = LaTeXML->new();  
$latexml->convertAndWrite("adocument");
```

But also see the convenient command line script `latexml` which suffices for most purposes.

#### C.1.2 Description

##### Methods

```
my $latexml = LaTeXML->new(%options);
```

Creates a new LaTeXML object for transforming TeX files into XML.

```
verbosity    : Controls verbosity; higher is more verbose,  
               smaller is quieter. 0 is the default.  
strict       : If true, undefined control sequences and  
               invalid document constructs give fatal  
               errors, instead of warnings.  
includeComments : If false, comments will be excluded  
               from the result document.  
preload      : an array of modules to preload  
searchpath   : an array of paths to be searched for Packages  
               and style files.
```

(these generally set config variables in the `LaTeXML::State` object)

**`$latexml->convertAndWriteFile($file);`**

Reads the TeX file `$file.tex`, digests and converts it to XML, and saves it in `$file.xml`.

**`$doc = $latexml->convertFile($file);`**

Reads the TeX file `$file`, digests and converts it to XML and returns the resulting `XML::LibXML::Document`.

**`$doc = $latexml->convertString($string);`**

Digests `$string`, presumably containing TeX markup, converts it to XML and returns the `XML::LibXML::Document`.

**`$latexml->writeDOM($doc, $name);`**

Writes the XML document to `$name.xml`.

**`$box = $latexml->digestFile($file);`**

Reads the TeX file `$file`, and digests it returning the `LaTeXML::Box` representation.

**`$box = $latexml->digestString($string);`**

Digests `$string`, which presumably contains TeX markup, returning the `LaTeXML::Box` representation.

**`$doc = $latexml->convertDocument($digested);`**

Converts `$digested` (the `LaTeXML::Box` representation) into XML, returning the `XML::LibXML::Document`.

### Customization

In the simplest case, LaTeXML will understand your source file and convert it automatically. With more complicated (realistic) documents, you will likely need to make document specific declarations for it to understand local macros, your mathematical notations, and so forth. Before processing a file `doc.tex`, LaTeXML reads the file `doc.latexml`, if present. Likewise, the LaTeXML implementation of a TeX style file, say `style.sty` is provided by a file `style.ltxml`.

See `LaTeXML::Package` for documentation of these customization and implementation files.

### C.1.3 See also

See `latexml` for a simple command line script.

See `LaTeXML::Package` for documentation of these customization and implementation files.

For cases when the high-level declarations described in `LaTeXML::Package` are not enough, or for understanding more of LaTeXML's internals, see

**LaTeXML::State**

maintains the current state of processing, bindings or variables, definitions, etc.

**LaTeXML::Token, LaTeXML::Mouth and LaTeXML::Gullet**

deal with tokens, tokenization of strings and files, and basic TeX sequences such as arguments, dimensions and so forth.

**LaTeXML::Box and LaTeXML::Stomach**

deal with digestion of tokens into boxes.

**LaTeXML::Document, LaTeXML::Model, LaTeXML::Rewrite**

dealing with conversion of the digested boxes into XML.

**LaTeXML::Definition and LaTeXML::Parameters**

representation of LaTeX macros, primitives, registers and constructors.

**LaTeXML::MathParser**

the math parser.

**LaTeXML::Global, LaTeXML::Error, LaTeXML::Object**

other random modules.

## C.2 LaTeXML::Object

Abstract base class for most LaTeXML objects.

### C.2.1 Description

`LaTeXML::Object` serves as an abstract base class for all other objects (both the data objects and control objects). It provides for common methods for stringification and comparison operations to simplify coding and to beautify error reporting.

#### Methods

**`$string = $object->stringify;`**

Returns a readable representation of `$object`, useful for debugging.

**`$string = $object->toString;`**

Returns the string content of `$object`; most useful for extracting a clean, usable, Unicode string from tokens or boxes that might representing a filename or such. To the extent possible, this should provide a string that can be used as XML content, or attribute values, or for filenames or whatever. However, control sequences defined as Constructors may leave TeX code in the value.

**`$boole = $object->equals($other);`**

Returns whether `$object` and `$other` are equal. Should perform a deep comparison, but the default implementation just compares for object identity.

**`$boole = $object->isaToken;`**

Returns whether `$object` is an `LaTeXML::Token`.

**`$boole = $object->isaBox;`**

Returns whether `$object` is an `LaTeXML::Box`.

**`$boole = $object->isaDefinition;`**

Returns whether `$object` is an `LaTeXML::Definition`.

**`$digested = $object->beDigested;`**

Does whatever is needed to digest the object, and return the digested representation. Tokens would be digested into boxes; Some objects, such as numbers can just return themselves.

**`$object->beAbsorbed($document);`**

Do whatever is needed to absorb the `$object` into the `$document`, typically by invoking appropriate methods on the `$document`.



## C.3 LaTeXML::Definition

Control sequence definitions.

### C.3.1 Description

These represent the various executables corresponding to control sequences. See [LaTeXML::Package](#) for the most convenient means to create them.

#### **LaTeXML::Expandable**

represents macros and other expandable control sequences that are carried out in the Gullet during expansion. The results of invoking an `LaTeXML::Expandable` should be a list of `LaTeXML::Tokens`.

#### **LaTeXML::Primitive**

represents primitive control sequences that are converted directly to Boxes or Lists containing basic Unicode content, rather than structured XML, or those executed for side effect during digestion in the [LaTeXML::Stomach](#), changing the [LaTeXML::State](#). The results of invoking a `LaTeXML::Primitive`, if any, should be a list of digested items (`LaTeXML::Box`, `LaTeXML::List` or `LaTeXML::Whatsit`).

#### **LaTeXML::Register**

is set up as a specialized primitive with a getter and setter to access and store values in the Stomach.

#### **LaTeXML::CharDef**

represents a further specialized Register for chardef.

#### **LaTeXML::Constructor**

represents control sequences that contribute arbitrary XML fragments to the document tree. During digestion, a `LaTeXML::Constructor` records the arguments used in the invocation to produce a [LaTeXML::Whatsit](#). The resulting [LaTeXML::Whatsit](#) (usually) generates an XML document fragment when absorbed by an instance of [LaTeXML::Document](#). Additionally, a `LaTeXML::Constructor` may have `beforeDigest` and `afterDigest` daemons defined which are executed for side effect, or for adding additional boxes to the output.

More documentation needed, but see `LaTeXML::Package` for the main user access to these.

#### **Methods in general**

**\$token = \$defn->getCS;**

Returns the (main) token that is bound to this definition.

**\$string = \$defn->getCSName;**

Returns the string form of the token bound to this definition, taking into account any alias for this definition.

**\$defn->readArguments(\$gullet);**

Reads the arguments for this \$defn from the \$gullet, returning a list of `LaTeXML::Tokens`.

**\$parameters = \$defn->getParameters;**

Return the `LaTeXML::Parameters` object representing the formal parameters of the definition.

**@tokens = \$defn->invocation(@args);**

Return the tokens that would invoke the given definition with the provided arguments. This is used to recreate the TeX code (or it's equivalent).

**\$defn->invoke;**

Invoke the action of the \$defn. For expandable definitions, this is done in the Gullet, and returns a list of `LaTeXML::Tokens`. For primitives, it is carried out in the Stomach, and returns a list of `LaTeXML::Boxes`. For a constructor, it is also carried out by the Stomach, and returns a `LaTeXML::Whatsit`. That whatsit will be responsible for constructing the XML document fragment, when the `LaTeXML::Document` invokes `$whatsit-beAbsorbed($document);>`.

Primitives and Constructors also support before and after daemons, lists of subroutines that are executed before and after digestion. These can be useful for changing modes, etc.

### More about Primitives

Primitive definitions may have lists of daemon subroutines, `beforeDigest` and `afterDigest`, that are executed before (and before the arguments are read) and after digestion. These should either end with `return;`, `()`, or return a list of digested objects ( `LaTeXML::Box`, etc) that will be contributed to the current list.

### More about Registers

Registers generally store some value in the current `LaTeXML::State`, but are not required to. Like TeX's registers, when they are digested, they expect an optional `=`, and then a value of the appropriate type. Register definitions support these additional methods:

**\$value = \$register->valueOf(@args);**

Return the value associated with the register, by invoking it's `getter` function. The additional args are used by some registers to index into a set, such as the index to `\count`.

**`$register->setValue($value,@args);`**

Assign a value to the register, by invoking it's setter function.

### **More about Constructors**

A constructor has as it's replacement a subroutine or a string pattern representing the XML fragment it should generate. In the case of a string pattern, the pattern is compiled into a subroutine on first usage by the internal class `LaTeXML::ConstructorCompiler`. Like primitives, constructors may have `beforeDigest` and `afterDigest`.

## C.4 LaTeXML::Global

Global exports used within LaTeXML, and in Packages.

### C.4.1 Synopsis

use LaTeXML::Global;

### C.4.2 Description

This module exports the various constants and constructors that are useful throughout LaTeXML, and in Package implementations.

#### Global state

##### **\$STATE;**

This is bound to the currently active `LaTeXML::State` by an instance of `LaTeXML` during processing.

#### Tokens

##### **\$catcode = CC\_ESCAPE;**

Constants for the category codes:

```
CC_BEGIN, CC_END, CC_MATH, CC_ALIGN, CC_EOL,
CC_PARAM, CC_SUPER, CC_SUB, CC_IGNORE,
CC_SPACE, CC_LETTER, CC_OTHER, CC_ACTIVE,
CC_COMMENT, CC_INVALID, CC_CS, CC_NOTEXPANDED.
```

[The last 2 are (apparent) extensions, with catcodes 16 and 17, respectively].

##### **\$token = Token(\$string,\$cc);**

Creates a `LaTeXML::Token` with the given content and catcode. The following shorthand versions are also exported for convenience:

```
T_BEGIN, T_END, T_MATH, T_ALIGN, T_PARAM,
T_SUB, T_SUPER, T_SPACE, T_LETTER($letter),
T_OTHER($char), T_ACTIVE($char),
T_COMMENT($comment), T_CS($cs)
```

##### **\$tokens = Tokens(@token);**

Creates a `LaTeXML::Tokens` from a list of `LaTeXML::Token`'s

##### **\$tokens = Tokenize(\$string);**

Tokenizes the `$string` according to the standard cattable, returning a `LaTeXML::Tokens`.

**\$tokens = TokenizeInternal(\$string);**

Tokenizes the `$string` according to the internal cattable (where `@` is a letter), returning a `LaTeXML::Tokens`.

**@tokens = Explode(\$string);**

Returns a list of the tokens corresponding to the characters in `$string`. All tokens have catcode `CC_OTHER`, except for spaces which have catcode `CC_SPACE`.

**@tokens = ExplodeText(\$string);**

Returns a list of the tokens corresponding to the characters in `$string`. All (roman) letters have catcode `CC_LETTER`, all others have catcode `CC_OTHER`, except for spaces which have catcode `CC_SPACE`.

**\$tokens = Revert(\$object);**

Returns a Tokens list containing the TeX that would create `$object`. Note that this is not necessarily the original TeX code; expansions or other substitutions may have taken place.

**StartSemiVerbatim(); ... ; EndSemiVerbatim();**

Disable most TeX catcodes.

**Boxes, etc.**

**\$box = Box(\$string,\$font,\$locator,\$tokens);**

Creates a Box representing the `$string` in the given `$font`. The `$locator` records the document source position. The `$tokens` is a Tokens list containing the TeX that created (or could have) the Box (See UnTeX). If `$font` or `$locator` are undef, they are obtained from the currently active `LaTeXML::State`. Note that `$string` can be undef which contributes nothing to the generated document, but does record the TeX code (in `$tokens`).

**Numbers, etc.**

**\$number = Number(\$num);**

Creates a Number object representing `$num`.

**\$number = Float(\$num);**

Creates a floating point object representing `$num`; This is not part of TeX, but useful.

**\$dimension = Dimension(\$dim);**

Creates a Dimension object. `$num` can be a string with the number and units (with any of the usual TeX recognized units), or just a number standing for scaled points (sp).

**\$mudimension = MuDimension(\$dim);**

Creates a MuDimension object; similar to Dimension.

**\$glue = Glue(\$gluespec);**

**\$glue = Glue(\$sp, \$plus, \$pfill, \$minus, \$mfill);**

Creates a Glue object. `$gluespec` can be a string in the form that TeX recognizes (number units optional plus and minus parts). Alternatively, the dimension, plus and minus parts can be given separately: `$pfill` and `$mfill` are 0 (when the `$plus` or `$minus` part is in sp) or 1,2,3 for fil, fill or filll.

**\$glue = MuGlue(\$gluespec);**

**\$glue = MuGlue(\$sp, \$plus, \$pfill, \$minus, \$mfill);**

Creates a MuGlue object, similar to Glue.

**\$pair = Pair(\$num1, \$num2);**

Creates an object representing a pair of numbers; Not a part of TeX, but useful for graphical objects. The two components can be any numerical object.

**\$pair = PairList(@pairs);**

Creates an object representing a list of pairs of numbers; Not a part of TeX, but useful for graphical objects.

## Error Reporting

**Fatal(\$message);**

Signals an fatal error, printing `$message` along with some context. In verbose mode a stack trace is printed.

**Error(\$message);**

Signals an error, printing `$message` along with some context. If in strict mode, this is the same as Fatal(). Otherwise, it attempts to continue processing..

**Warn(\$message);**

Prints a warning message along with a short indicator of the input context, unless verbosity is quiet.

**NoteProgress(\$message);**

Prints `$message` unless the verbosity level below 0.

**Generic functions****Stringify(\$object) ;**

Returns a string identifying `$object`, for debugging. Works on any values and objects, but invokes the `stringify` method on blessed objects. More informative than the default perl conversion to a string.

**ToString(\$object) ;**

Converts `$object` to string attempting, when possible, to generate straight text without TeX markup. This is most useful for converting Tokens or Boxes to document content or attribute values, or values to be used for pathnames, keywords, etc. Generally, however, it is not possible to convert Whatsits generated by Constructors into clean strings, without TeX markup. Works on any values and objects, but invokes the `toString` method on blessed objects.

**Equals(\$a, \$b) ;**

Compares the two objects for equality. Works on any values and objects, but invokes the `equals` method on blessed objects, which does a deep comparison of the two objects.

**Revert(\$object) ;**

Converts `$object` to a Tokens list containing the TeX that created it (or could have). Note that this is not necessarily the original TeX code; expansions or other substitutions may have taken place.

**UnTeX(\$object) ;**

Converts `$object` to a string containing TeX that created it (or could have). Note that this is not necessarily the original TeX code; expansions or other substitutions may have taken place.

## C.5 LaTeXML::Error

Internal Error reporting code.

### C.5.1 Description

LaTeXML::Error does some simple stack analysis to generate more informative, readable, error messages for LaTeXML. Its routines are used by the error reporting methods from LaTeXML::Global, namely Warn, Error and Fatal.

No user serviceable parts inside. No symbols are exported.

#### Functions

**\$string = LaTeXML::Error::generateMessage(\$typ, \$msg, \$lng, @more) ;**

Constructs an error or warning message based on the current stack and the current location in the document. \$typ is a short string characterizing the type of message, such as "Error". \$msg is the error message itself. If \$lng is true, will generate a more verbose message; this also uses the VERBOSITY set in the \$STATE. Longer messages will show a trace of the objects invoked on the stack, @more are additional strings to include in the message.

**\$string = LaTeXML::Error::stacktrace;**

Return a formatted string showing a trace of the stackframes up until this function was invoked.

**@objects = LaTeXML::Error::objectStack;**

Return a list of objects invoked on the stack. This procedure only considers those stackframes which involve methods, and the objects are those (unique) objects that the method was called on.



## C.6 LaTeXML::Package

Support for package implementations and document customization.

### C.6.1 Synopsis

This package defines and exports most of the procedures users will need to customize or extend LaTeXML. The LaTeXML implementation of some package might look something like the following, but see the installed LaTeXML/Package directory for realistic examples.

```
use LaTeXML::Package;
use strict;
#
# Load "anotherpackage"
RequirePackage('anotherpackage');
#
# A simple macro, just like in TeX
DefMacro('\thesection', '\thechapter.\roman{section}');
#
# A constructor defines how a control sequence generates XML:
DefConstructor('\thanks{}', "<ltx:thanks>#1</ltx:thanks>");
#
# And a simple environment ...
DefEnvironment('{abstract}', '<abstract>#body</abstract>');
#
# A math symbol \Real to stand for the Reals:
DefMath('\Real', "\x{211D}", role=>'ID');
#
# Or a semantic floor:
DefMath('\floor{}', '\left\lfloor#1\right\rfloor');
#
# More esoteric ...
# Use a RelaxNG schema
RelaxNGSchema("MySchema");
# Or use a special DocType if you have to:
# DocType("rootelement",
#         "-//Your Site//Your DocType",'your.dtd',
#         prefix=>"http://whatever/");
#
# Allow sometag elements to be automatically closed if needed
Tag('prefix:sometag', autoClose=>1);
#
# Don't forget this, so perl knows the package loaded.
1;
```

## C.6.2 Description

To provide a LaTeXML-specific version of a LaTeX package `mypackage.sty` or class `myclass.cls` (so that eg. `\usepackage{mypackage}` works), you create the file `mypackage.sty.ltxml` or `myclass.cls.ltxml` and save it in the searchpath (current directory, or one of the directories given to the `-path` option, or possibly added to the variable `SEARCHPATHS`). Similarly, to provide document-specific customization for, say, `mydoc.tex`, you would create the file `mydoc.latexml` (typically in the same directory). However, in the first cases, `mypackage.sty.ltxml` are loaded *instead* of `mypackage.sty`, while a file like `mydoc.latexml` is loaded in *addition* to `mydoc.tex`. In either case, you'll use `LaTeXML::Package`; to import the various declarations and defining forms that allow you to specify what should be done with various control sequences, whether there is special treatment of certain document elements, and so forth. Using `LaTeXML::Package` also imports the functions and variables defined in `LaTeXML::Global`, so see that documentation as well.

Since LaTeXML attempts to mimic TeX, a familiarity with TeX's processing model is also helpful. Additionally, it is often useful, when implementing non-trivial behaviour, to think TeX-like.

Many of the following forms take code references as arguments or options. That is, either a reference to a defined sub, `\&somesub`, or an anonymous function sub `{ ... }`. To document these cases, and the arguments that are passed in each case, we'll use a notation like `CODE($token,...)`.

### Control Sequences

Many of the following forms define the behaviour of control sequences. In TeX you'll typically only define macros. In LaTeXML, we're effectively redefining TeX itself, so we define macros as well as primitives, registers, constructors and environments. These define the behaviour of these commands when processed during the various phases of LaTeX's imitation of TeX's digestive tract.

The first argument to each of these defining forms (`DefMacro`, `DefPrimitive`, etc) is a *prototype* consisting of the control sequence being defined along with the specification of parameters required by the control sequence. Each parameter describes how to parse tokens following the control sequence into arguments or how to delimit them. To simplify coding and capture common idioms in TeX/LaTeX programming, latexml's parameter specifications are more expressive than TeX's `\def` or LaTeX's `\newcommand`. Examples of the prototypes for familiar TeX or LaTeX control sequences are:

```
DefConstructor('\usepackage[]{}', ...
DefPrimitive('\multiply Variable SkipKeyword:by Number', ...
DefPrimitive('\newcommand OptionalMatch:* {Token}[]{}', ...
```

**Control Sequence Parameters** The general syntax for parameter for a control sequence is something like

```
OpenDelim? Modifier? Type (: value (| value)* )? CloseDelim?
```

The enclosing delimiters, if any, are either `{}` or `[]`, affect the way the argument is delimited. With `{}`, a regular TeX argument (token or sequence balanced by braces) is read before parsing according to the type (if needed). With `[]`, a LaTeX optional argument is read, delimited by (non-nested) square brackets.

The modifier can be either `Optional` or `Skip`, allowing the argument to be optional. For `Skip`, no argument is contributed to the argument list.

The shorthands `{}` and `[]` default the type to `Plain` and reads a normal TeX argument or LaTeX default argument with no special parsing.

The predefined argument types are as follows.

#### **Plain, Semiverbatim**

Reads a standard TeX argument being either the next token, or if the next token is an `{`, the balanced token list. In the case of `Semiverbatim`, many catcodes are disabled, which is handy for URL's, labels and similar.

#### **Token, XToken**

Read a single TeX Token. For `XToken`, if the next token is expandable, it is repeatedly expanded until an unexpandable token remains, which is returned.

#### **Number, Dimension, Glue or MuGlue**

Read an Object corresponding to Number, Dimension, Glue or MuGlue, using TeX's rules for parsing these objects.

#### **Until:match, XUntil:match**

Reads tokens until a match to the tokens *match* is found, returning the tokens preceding the match. This corresponds to TeX delimited arguments. For `XUntil`, tokens are expanded as they are matched and accumulated.

#### **UntilBrace**

Reads tokens until the next open brace `{`. This corresponds to the peculiar TeX construct `\def\foo#{...}`.

#### **Match:match(|match)\*, Keyword:match(|match)\***

Reads tokens expecting a match to one of the token lists *match*, returning the one that matches, or undef. For `Keyword`, case and catcode of the *matches* are ignored. Additionally, any leading spaces are skipped.

#### **Balanced**

Read tokens until a closing `}`, but respecting nested `{}` pairs.

#### **BalancedParen**

Read a parenthesis delimited tokens, but does *not* balance any nested parentheses.

**Undigested, Digested, DigestUntil:match**

These types alter the usual sequence of tokenization and digestion in separate stages (like TeX). A `Undigested` parameter inhibits digestion completely and remains in token form. A `Digested` parameter gets digested until the (required) opening `{` is balanced; this is useful when the content would usually need to have been protected in order to correctly deal with catcodes. `DigestUntil` digests tokens until a token matching *match* is found.

**Variable**

Reads a token, expanding if necessary, and expects a control sequence naming a writable register. If such is found, it returns an array of the corresponding definition object, and any arguments required by that definition.

**SkipSpaces, Skip1Space**

Skips one, or any number of, space tokens, if present, but contributes nothing to the argument list.

**Control of Scoping** Most defining commands accept an option to control how the definition is stored, `scope=>$scope`, where `$scope` can be `c<'global'>` for global definitions, `'local'`, to be stored in the current stack frame, or a string naming a *scope*. A scope saves a set of definitions and values that can be activated at a later time.

Particularly interesting forms of scope are those that get automatically activated upon changes of counter and label. For example, definitions that have `scope=>'section:1.1'` will be activated when the section number is "1.1", and will be deactivated when the section ends.

**Macros****DefMacro(\$prototype, \$string | \$tokens | \$code, %options);**

Defines the macro expansion for `$prototype`; a macro control sequence that is expanded during macro expansion time (in the `LaTeXML::Gullet`). If a `$string` is supplied, it will be tokenized at definition time. Any macro arguments will be substituted for parameter indicators (eg #1) at expansion time; the result is used as the expansion of the control sequence.

If defined by `$code`, the form is `CODE($gullet, @args)` and it must return a list of `LaTeXML::Token`'s.

DefMacro options are

**scope=>\$scope**

See `/ "Control of Scoping"`.

**locked=>boolean**

Whether this definition is locked out of changes in the TeX sources.

Examples:

```
DefMacro('\thefootnote','\arabic{footnote}');
DefMacro('\today',sub { ExplodeText(today()); });
```

**DefMacroI(\$cs,\$paramlist,\$string |\$tokens |\$code,%options);**

Internal form of `DefMacro` where the control sequence and parameter list have already been parsed; useful for definitions from within code. Also, slightly more efficient for macros with no arguments (use `undef` for `$paramlist`).

### Conditionals

**DefConditional(\$prototype,\$test,%options);**

Defines a conditional for `$prototype`; a control sequence that is processed during macro expansion time (in the `LaTeXML::Gullet`). A conditional corresponds to a TeX `\if`. It evaluates `$test`, which should be CODE that is applied to the arguments, if any. Depending on whether the result of that evaluation returns a true or false value (in the usual Perl sense), the result of the expansion is either the first or else code following, in the usual TeX sense.

DefConditional options are

**scope=>\$scope**

See `/"Control of Scoping"`.

**locked=>boolean**

Whether this definition is locked out of changes in the TeX sources.

Example:

```
DefConditional('\ifmmode',sub { LookupValue('IN_MATH'); });
```

**DefConditionalI(\$cs,\$paramlist,\$test,%options);**

Internal form of `DefConditional` where the control sequence and parameter list have already been parsed; useful for definitions from within code. Also, slightly more efficient for conditional with no arguments (use `undef` for `$paramlist`).

### Primitives

**DefPrimitive(\$prototype,\$replacement,%options);**

Define a primitive control sequence; a primitive is processed during digestion (in the `LaTeXML::Stomach`), after macro expansion but before Construction time. Primitive control sequences generate Boxes or Lists, generally containing basic Unicode content, rather than structured XML. Primitive control sequences are also executed for side effect during digestion, effecting changes to the `LaTeXML::State`.

The `$replacement` is either a string, used as the Boxes text content (the box gets the current font), or `CODE($stomach,@args)`, which is invoked at digestion time, probably for side-effect, but returning Boxes or Lists. `$replacement` may also be `undef`, which contributes nothing to the document, but does record the TeX code that created it.

DefPrimitive options are

**mode=>(text|display\_math| inline\_math)**

Changes to this mode during digestion.

**bounded=>boolean**

If true, TeX grouping (ie. `{}`) is enforced around this invocation.

**requireMath=>boolean,**

**forbidMath=>boolean**

These specify whether the given constructor can only appear, or cannot appear, in math mode.

**font=>{fontspec...}**

Specifies the font to be set by this invocation. See `/"MergeFont(%style);"`

If the font change is to only apply to material generated within this command, you would also use `<bounded=1>>`; otherwise, the font will remain in effect afterwards as for a font switching command.

**beforeDigest=>CODE(\$stomach)**

This option supplies a Daemon to be executed during digestion just before the main part of the primitive is executed. The CODE should either return nothing (return;) or a list of digested items (Box's,List,Whatsit). It can thus change the State and/or add to the digested output.

**afterDigest=>CODE(\$stomach)**

This option supplies a Daemon to be executed during digestion just after the main part of the primitive is executed. it should either return nothing (return;) or digested items. It can thus change the State and/or add to the digested output.

**scope=>\$scope**

See `/"Control of Scoping"`.

**locked=>boolean**

Whether this definition is locked out of changes in the TeX sources.

**isPrefix=>1**

Indicates whether this is a prefix type of command; This is only used for the special TeX assignment prefixes, like `\global`.

Example:

```
DefPrimitive('\begingroup',sub { $_[0]->begingroup; });
```

**DefPrimitiveI (\$cs, \$paramlist, CODE (\$stomach, @args) , %options) ;**

Internal form of `DefPrimitive` where the control sequence and parameter list have already been parsed; useful for definitions from within code.

**DefRegister (\$prototype, \$value, %options) ;**

Defines a register with the given initial value (a Number, Dimension, Glue, MuGlue or Tokens — I haven't handled Box's yet). Usually, the `$prototype` is just the control sequence, but registers are also handled by prototypes like `\count{Number}`. `DefRegister` arranges that the register value can be accessed when a numeric, dimension, ... value is being read, and also defines the control sequence for assignment.

Options are

**readonly**

specifies if it is not allowed to change this value.

**getter=>CODE(@args)**

**setter=>CODE(\$value,@args)**

By default the value is stored in the State's Value table under a name concatenating the control sequence and argument values. These options allow other means of fetching and storing the value.

Example:

```
DefRegister (' \pretolerance' , Number (100) ) ;
```

**DefRegisterI (\$cs, \$paramlist, \$value, %options) ;**

Internal form of `DefRegister` where the control sequence and parameter list have already been parsed; useful for definitions from within code.

## Constructors

**DefConstructor (\$prototype, \$xmlpattern | \$code, %options) ;**

The Constructor is where `LaTeXML` really starts getting interesting; invoking the control sequence will generate an arbitrary XML fragment in the document tree. More specifically: during digestion, the arguments will be read and digested, creating a `LaTeXML::Whatsit` to represent the object. During absorption by the `LaTeXML::Document`, the `Whatsit` will generate the XML fragment according to the replacement `$xmlpattern`, or by executing `CODE`.

The `$xmlpattern` is simply a bit of XML as a string with certain substitutions to be made. The substitutions are of the following forms:

If code is supplied, the form is `CODE ($document, @args, %properties)`

**#1, #2 ... #name**

These are replaced by the corresponding argument (for #1) or property (for #name) stored with the Whatsit. Each are turned into a string when it appears as in an attribute position, or recursively processed when it appears as content.

**&function(@args)**

Another form of substituted value is prefixed with & which invokes a function. For example, `&func(#1)` would invoke the function `func` on the first argument to the control sequence; what it returns will be inserted into the document.

**?COND(pattern) or ?COND(ifpattern)(elsepattern)**

Patterns can be conditionalized using this form. The `COND` is any of the above expressions, considered true if the result is non-empty. Thus `?#1(<foo/>)` would add the empty element `foo` if the first argument were given.

^

If the constructor *begins* with ^, the XML fragment is allowed to *float up* to a parent node that is allowed to contain it, according to the Document Type.

The Whatsit property `font` is defined by default. Additional properties `body` and `trailer` are defined when `captureBody` is true, or for environments. By using `$whatsit->setProperty(key=>$value)`; within `afterDigest`, or by using the `properties` option, other properties can be added.

DefConstructor options are

**mode=>(text|display\_math| inline\_math)**

Changes to this mode during digestion.

**bounded=>boolean**

If true, TeX grouping (ie. `{}`) is enforced around this invocation.

**requireMath=>boolean,****forbidMath=>boolean**

These specify whether the given constructor can only appear, or cannot appear, in math mode.

**font=>{fontspec...}**

Specifies the font to be set by this invocation. See `/"MergeFont(%style);"` If the font change is to only apply to material generated within this command, you would also use `<bounded=1>>`; otherwise, the font will remain in effect afterwards as for a font switching command.

**reversion=>\$texstring or CODE(\$whatsit,#1,#2,...)**

Specifies the reversion of the invocation back into TeX tokens (if the default reversion is not appropriate). The `$texstring` string can include `#1,#2...` The `CODE` is called with the `$whatsit` and digested arguments.



**properties=>**{prop=>value,...} or **CODE(\$stomach,#1,#2...)**

This option supplies additional properties to be set on the generated Whatsit. In the first form, the values can be of any type, but if a value is a code references, it takes the same args (\$stomach,#1,#2,...) and should return the value. In the second form, the code should return a hash of properties.

**beforeDigest=>CODE(\$stomach)**

This option supplies a Daemon to be executed during digestion just before the Whatsit is created. The CODE should either return nothing (return;) or a list of digested items (Box's,List,Whatsit). It can thus change the State and/or add to the digested output.

**afterDigest=>CODE(\$stomach,\$whatsit)**

This option supplies a Daemon to be executed during digestion just after the Whatsit is created. it should either return nothing (return;) or digested items. It can thus change the State, modify the Whatsit, and/or add to the digested output.

**beforeConstruct=>CODE(\$document,\$whatsit)**

Supplies CODE to execute before constructing the XML (generated by \$replacement).

**afterConstruct=>CODE(\$document,\$whatsit)**

Supplies CODE to execute after constructing the XML.

**captureBody=>boolean or Token**

if true, arbitrary following material will be accumulated into a 'body' until the current grouping level is reverted, or till the Token is encountered if the option is a Token. This body is available as the body property of the Whatsit. This is used by environments and math.

**alias=>\$control\_sequence**

Provides a control sequence to be used when reverting Whatsit's back to Tokens, in cases where it isn't the command used in the \$prototype.

**nargs=>\$nargs**

This gives a number of args for cases where it can't be inferred directly from the \$prototype (eg. when more args are explicitly read by Daemons).

**scope=>\$scope**

See [/"Control of Scoping"](#).

**DefConstructorI(\$cs,\$paramlist,\$xmlpattern |\$code,%options);**

Internal form of DefConstructor where the control sequence and parameter list have already been parsed; useful for definitions from within code.

**DefMath(\$prototype,\$tex,%options);**

A common shorthand constructor; it defines a control sequence that creates a mathematical object, such as a symbol, function or operator application. The options given can effectively create semantic macros that contribute to the eventual

parsing of mathematical content. In particular, it generates an XMDual using the replacement `$tex` for the presentation. The content information is drawn from the name and options

These `DefConstructor` options also apply:

```
reversion, alias, beforeDigest, afterDigest,
beforeConstruct, afterConstruct and scope.
```

Additionally, it accepts

**style=>astyle**

adds a style attribute to the object.

**name=>aname**

gives a name attribute for the object

**omcd=>cdname**

gives the OpenMath content dictionary that name is from.

**role=>grammatical\_role**

adds a grammatical role attribute to the object; this specifies the grammatical role that the object plays in surrounding expressions. This direly needs documentation!

**font=>{fontspec}**

Specifies the font to be used for when creating this object. See `/"MergeFont(%style);"`.

**mathstyle=(display|text| inline)**

Controls whether the this object will be presented in a specific mathstyle, or according to the current setting of `mathstyle`.

**scriptpos=>(mid|post)**

Controls the positioning of any sub and super-scripts relative to this object; whether they be stacked over or under it, or whether they will appear in the usual position. TeX.pool defines a function `doScriptpos()` which is useful for operators like `\sum` in that it sets to `mid` position when in `displaystyle`, otherwise `post`.

**operator\_role=>grammatical\_role**

**operator\_scriptpos=>boolean**

These two are similar to `role` and `scriptpos`, but are used in unusual cases. These apply to the given attributes to the operator token in the content branch.

**nogroup=>boolean**

Normally, these commands are digested with an implicit grouping around them, so that changes to fonts, etc, are local. Providing `<nogroup=1>>` inhibits this.

Example:

```
DefMath('\infty',"\\x{221E}", role=>'ID', meaning=>'infinity');
```

**DefMathI(\$cs,\$paramlist,\$tex,%options);**

Internal form of DefMath where the control sequence and parameter list have already been parsed; useful for definitions from within code.

**DefEnvironment(\$prototype,\$replacement,%options);**

Defines an Environment that generates a specific XML fragment. The \$replacement is of the same form as that for DefConstructor, but will generally include reference to the #body property. Upon encountering a `\begin{env}`: the mode is switched, if needed, else a new group is opened; then the environment name is noted; the beforeDigest daemon is run. Then the Whatsit representing the begin command (but ultimately the whole environment) is created and the afterDigestBegin daemon is run. Next, the body will be digested and collected until the balancing `\end{env}`. Then, any afterDigest daemon is run, the environment is ended, finally the mode is ended or the group is closed. The body and `\end{env}` whatsit are added to the `\begin{env}`'s whatsit as body and trailer, respectively.

It shares options with DefConstructor:

```
mode, requireMath, forbidMath, properties, nargs,
font, beforeDigest, afterDigest, beforeConstruct,
afterConstruct and scope.
```

Additionally, afterDigestBegin is effectively an afterDigest for the `\begin{env}` control sequence.

Example:

```
DefConstructor('\emph{ }', "<ltx:emph>#1</ltx:emph", mode=>'text');
```

**DefEnvironmentI(\$name,\$paramlist,\$replacement,%options);**

Internal form of DefEnvironment where the control sequence and parameter list have already been parsed; useful for definitions from within code.

## Inputing Content and Definitions

**FindFile(\$name,%options);**

Find an appropriate file with the given \$name in the current directories in SEARCHPATHS. If a file ending with `.ltxml` is found, it will be preferred.

Note that if the \$name starts with a recognized *protocol* (currently one of (literal|http|https|ftp)) followed by a colon, the name is returned, as is, and no search for files is carried out.

The options are:

**type=>type**

specifies the file type. If not set, it will search for both `$name.tex` and `$name`.

**noltxml=>1**

inhibits searching for the LaTeXML binding for the file (ie. `$name.$type.ltxml`

**notex=>1**

inhibits searching for raw tex version of the file. That is, it will *only* search for the LaTeXML binding.

**InputContent (\$request, %options) ;**

`InputContent` is used for cases when the file (or data) is plain TeX material that is expected to contribute content to the document (as opposed to pure definitions). A Mouth is opened onto the file, and subsequent reading and/or digestion will pull Tokens from that Mouth until it is exhausted, or closed.

In some circumstances it may be useful to provide a string containing the TeX material explicitly, rather than referencing a file. In this case, the `literal` pseudo-protocol may be used:

```
InputContent ('literal:\textit{Hey}');
```

If a file named `$request.latexml` exists, it will be read in as if it were a latexml binding file (ie. perl), before processing. This can be used for adhoc customization of the conversion of specific files, without modifying the source, or creating more elaborate bindings.

The only option to `InputContent` is:

**noerror=>boolean**

Inhibits signalling an error if no appropriate file is found.

**Input (\$request) ;**

`Input` is analogous to LaTeX's `\input`, and is used in cases where it isn't completely clear whether content or definitions is expected. Once a file is found, the approach specified by `InputContent` or `InputDefinitions` is used, depending on which type of file is found.

**InputDefinitions (\$request, %options) ;**

`InputDefinitions` is used for loading *definitions*, ie. various macros, settings, etc, rather than document content; it can be used to load LaTeXML's binding files, or for reading in raw TeX definitions or style files. It reads and processes the material completely before returning, even in the case of TeX definitions. This procedure optionally supports the conventions used for standard LaTeX packages and classes (see `RequirePackage` and `LoadClass`).

Options for `InputDefinitions` are:

**type=>\$type**

the file type to search for.

**noltxml=>boolean**

inhibits searching for a LaTeXML binding; only raw TeX files will be sought and loaded.

**notex=>boolean**

inhibits searching for raw TeX files, only a LaTeXML binding will be sought and loaded.

**noerror=>boolean**

inhibits reporting an error if no appropriate file is found.

The following options are primarily useful when `InputDefinitions` is supporting standard LaTeX package and class loading.

**withoptions=boolean**

indicates whether to pass in any options from the calling class or package.

**handleoptions=boolean**

indicates whether options processing should be handled.

**options=>[...]**

specifies a list of options to be passed (possibly in addition to any provided by the calling class or package).

**after**

provides code or tokens to be processed by a `$name.$type-hook` macro.

**as\_class**

fishy option that indicates that this definitions file should be treated as if it were defining a class; typically shows up in latex compatibility mode, or AMSTeX.

**Class and Packages****RequirePackage(\$package, %options) ;**

Finds and loads a package implementation (usually `*.sty.ltxml`, unless `raw` is specified) for the required `$package`. The options are:

**type=>type**

specifies the file type (default `sty`).

**options=>[...]**

specifies a list of package options.

**noltxml=>1**

inhibits searching for the LaTeXML binding for the file (ie. `$name.$type.ltxml`

**notex=>1**

inhibits searching for raw tex version of the file. That is, it will *only* search for the LaTeXML binding.

**LoadClass (\$class, %options) ;**

Finds and loads a class definition (usually \*.cls.latexml). The only option is

**options=>[...]**

specifies a list of class options.

**LoadPool (\$pool, %options) ;**

Loads a *pool* file, one of the top-level definition files, such as TeX, LaTeX or AMSTeX.

**DeclareOption (\$option, \$code) ;**

Declares an option for the current package or class. The *\$code* can be a string or Tokens (which will be macro expanded), or can be a code reference which is treated as a primitive.

If a package or class wants to accomodate options, it should start with one or more `DeclareOptions`, followed by `ProcessOptions()`.

**PassOptions (\$name, \$ext, @options) ;**

Causes the given *@options* (strings) to be passed to the package (if *\$ext* is *sty*) or class (if *\$ext* is *cls*) named by *\$name*.

**ProcessOptions () ;**

Processes the options that have been passed to the current package or class in a fashion similar to LaTeX. If the keyword `inorder=>1` is given, the options are processed in the order they were used, like `ProcessOptions*`.

**ExecuteOptions (@options) ;**

Process the options given explicitly in *@options*.

**AtBeginDocument (@stuff) ;**

Arranges for *@stuff* to be carried out after the preamble, at the beginning of the document. *@stuff* should typically be macro-level stuff, but carried out for side effect; it should be tokens, tokens lists, strings (which will be tokenized), or a sub (which presumably contains code as would be in a package file, such as `DefMacro` or similar.

This operation is useful for style files loaded with `--preload` or document specific customization files (ie. ending with `.latexml`); normally the contents would be executed before LaTeX and other style files are loaded and thus can be overridden by them. By deferring the evaluation to begin-document time, these contents can override those style files. This is likely to only be meaningful for LaTeX documents.

## Counters and IDs

### **NewCounter(\$ctr,\$within,%options);**

Defines a new counter, like LaTeX's `\newcounter`, but extended. It defines a counter that can be used to generate reference numbers, and defines `\the$ctr`, etc. It also defines an "uncounter" which can be used to generate ID's (xml:id) for unnumbered objects. `$ctr` is the name of the counter. If defined, `$within` is the name of another counter which, when incremented, will cause this counter to be reset. The options are

`idprefix` Specifies a prefix to be used to generate ID's  
when using this counter  
`nested` Not sure that this is even sane.

### **\$num = CounterValue(\$ctr);**

Fetches the value associated with the counter `$ctr`.

### **\$tokens = StepCounter(\$ctr);**

Analog of `\stepcounter`, steps the counter and returns the expansion of `\the$ctr`. Usually you should use `RefStepCounter($ctr)` instead.

### **\$keys = RefStepCounter(\$ctr);**

Analog of `\refstepcounter`, steps the counter and returns a hash containing the keys `refnum=$refnum`, `id=>$id`. This makes it suitable for use in a `properties` option to constructors. The `id` is generated in parallel with the reference number to assist debugging.

### **\$keys = RefStepID(\$ctr);**

Like to `RefStepCounter`, but only steps the "uncounter", and returns only the id; This is useful for unnumbered cases of objects that normally get both a `refnum` and `id`.

### **ResetCounter(\$ctr);**

Resets the counter `$ctr` to zero.

### **GenerateID(\$document,\$node,\$whatsit,\$prefix);**

Generates an ID for nodes during the construction phase, useful for cases where the counter based scheme is inappropriate. The calling pattern makes it appropriate for use in Tag, as in `Tag('ltx:para',afterClose=>sub { GenerateID(@_, 'p') })`

If `$node` doesn't already have an `xml:id` set, it computes an appropriate id by concatenating the `xml:id` of the closest ancestor with an id (if any), the prefix (if any) and a unique counter.

## Document Model

Constructors define how TeX markup will generate XML fragments, but the Document Model is used to control exactly how those fragments are assembled.

### **Tag (\$tag, %properties) ;**

Declares properties of elements with the name \$tag. Note that Tag can set or add properties to any element from any binding file, unlike the properties set on control by DefPrimitive, DefConstructor, etc.. And, since the properties are recorded in the current Model, they are not subject to TeX grouping; once set, they remain in effect until changed or the end of the document.

The \$tag can be specified in one of three forms:

```
prefix:name matches a specific name in a specific namespace
prefix:*    matches any tag in the specific namespace;
*           matches any tag in any namespace.
```

There are two kinds of properties:

### **Scalar properties**

For scalar properties, only a single value is returned for a given element. When the property is looked up, each of the above forms is considered (the specific element name, the namespace, and all elements); the first defined value is returned.

The recognized scalar properties are:

#### **autoOpen=>boolean**

Specifies whether this \$tag can be automatically opened if needed to insert an element that can only be contained by \$tag. This property can help match the more SGML-like LaTeX to XML.

#### **autoClose=>boolean**

Specifies whether this \$tag can be automatically closed if needed to close an ancestor node, or insert an element into an ancestor. This property can help match the more SGML-like LaTeX to XML.

### **Code properties**

These properties provide a bit of code to be run at the times of certain events associated with an element. *All* the code bits that match a given element will be run, and since they can be added by any binding file, and be specified in a random orders, a little bit of extra control is desirable.

Firstly, any *early* codes are run (eg afterOpen:early), then any normal codes (without modifier) are run, and finally any *late* codes are run (eg. afterOpen:late).

Within *each* of those groups, the codes assigned for an element's specific name are run first, then those assigned for its package and finally the generic one (\*); that is, the most specific codes are run first.



When code properties are accumulated by `Tag` for normal or late events, the code is appended to the end of the current list (if there were any previous codes added); for early event, the code is prepended.

The recognized code properties are:

**afterOpen=>CODE(\$document,\$box), afterOpen:early=>CODE(\$document,\$box),  
afterOpen:late=>CODE(\$document,\$box)**

Provides CODE to be run whenever a node with this \$tag is opened. It is called with the document being constructed, and the initiating digested object as arguments. It is called after the node has been created, and after any initial attributes due to the constructor (passed to `openElement`) are added.

**afterClose=>CODE(\$document,\$box), afterClose:early=>CODE(\$document,\$box),  
afterClose:late=>CODE(\$document,\$box)**

Provides CODE to be run whenever a node with this \$tag is closed. It is called with the document being constructed, and the initiating digested object as arguments.

**RelaxNGSchema (\$schemaname) ;**

Specifies the schema to use for determining document model. You can leave off the extension; it will look for `.rng`, and maybe eventually, `.rnc` once that is implemented.

**RegisterNamespace (\$prefix, \$URL) ;**

Declares the \$prefix to be associated with the given \$URL. These prefixes may be used in ltxml files, particularly for constructors, xpath expressions, etc. They are not necessarily the same as the prefixes that will be used in the generated document. Use the prefix `#default` for the default, non-prefixed, namespace. (See `RegisterDocumentNamespace`, as well as `DocType` or `RelaxNGSchema`).

**RegisterDocumentNamespace (\$prefix, \$URL) ;**

Declares the \$prefix to be associated with the given \$URL used within the generated XML. They are not necessarily the same as the prefixes used in code (`RegisterNamespace`). This function is less rarely needed, as the namespace declarations are generally obtained from the DTD or Schema themselves. Use the prefix `#default` for the default, non-prefixed, namespace. (See `DocType` or `RelaxNGSchema`).

**DocType (\$rootelement, \$publicid, \$systemid, %namespaces) ;**

Declares the expected rootelement, the public and system ID's of the document type to be used in the final document. The hash %namespaces specifies the namespaces prefixes that are expected to be found in the DTD, along with each associated namespace URI. Use the prefix `#default` for the default namespace (ie. the namespace of non-prefixed elements in the DTD).

The prefixes defined for the DTD may be different from the prefixes used in implementation CODE (eg. in ltxml files; see `RegisterNamespace`). The generated document will use the namespaces and prefixes defined for the DTD.

A related capability is adding commands to be executed at the beginning and end of the document

**AtBeginDocument (\$tokens, ...)**

adds the `$tokens` to the list of tokens to be processed a just after `\\begin{document}`. These tokens can be used for side effect, or any content they generate will appear as the first children of the document (but probably after titles and frontmatter).

**AtEndDocument (\$tokens, ...)**

adds the `$tokens` to the list of tokens to be processed a just before `\\end{document}`. These tokens can be used for side effect, or any content they generate will appear as the last children of the document.

**Document Rewriting**

During document construction, as each node gets closed, the text content gets simplified. We'll call it *applying ligatures*, for lack of a better name.

**DefLigature (\$regexp, %options) ;**

Apply the regular expression (given as a string: `"/fa/fa/"` since it will be converted internally to a true regexp), to the text content. The only option is `fontTest=CODE ($font)`; if given, then the substitution is applied only when `fontTest` returns true.

Predefined Ligatures combine sequences of `"."` or single-quotes into appropriate Unicode characters.

**DefMathLigature (CODE (\$document, @nodes) ) ;**

`CODE` is called on each sequence of math nodes at a given level. If they should be replaced, return a list of `($n, $string, %attributes)` to replace the text content of the first node with `$string` content and add the given attributes. The next `$n-1` nodes are removed. If no replacement is called for, `CODE` should return `undef`.

Predefined Math Ligatures combine letter or digit Math Tokens (XMTok) into multicharacter symbols or numbers, depending on the font (non math italic).

After document construction, various rewriting and augmenting of the document can take place.

**DefRewrite (%specification) ;**

**DefMathRewrite (%specification) ;**

These two declarations define document rewrite rules that are applied to the document tree after it has been constructed, but before math parsing, or any other postprocessing, is done. The `%specification` consists of a sequence of key/value pairs with the initial specs successively narrowing the selection of document nodes, and the remaining specs indicating how to modify or replace the selected nodes.

The following select portions of the document:

**label =>\$label**

Selects the part of the document with label=\$label

**scope =>\$scope**

The \$scope could be "label:foo" or "section:1.2.3" or something similar. These select a subtree labelled 'foo', or a section with reference number "1.2.3"

**xpath =>\$xpath**

Select those nodes matching an explicit xpath expression.

**match =>\$TeX**

Selects nodes that look like what the processing of \$TeX would produce.

**regexp=>\$regexp**

Selects text nodes that match the regular expression.

The following act upon the selected node:

**attributes =>\$hash**

Adds the attributes given in the hash reference to the node.

**replace =>\$replacement**

Interprets the \$replacement as TeX code to generate nodes that will replace the selected nodes.

**Mid-Level support****\$tokens = Expand(\$tokens) ;**

Expands the given \$tokens according to current definitions.

**\$boxes = Digest(\$tokens) ;**

Processes and digests the \$tokens. Any arguments needed by control sequences in \$tokens must be contained within the \$tokens itself.

**@tokens = Invocation(\$cs,@args) ;**

Constructs a sequence of tokens that would invoke the token \$cs on the arguments.

**RawTeX('... tex code ...') ;**

RawTeX is a convenience function for including chunks of raw TeX (or LaTeX) code in a Package implementation. It is useful for copying portions of the normal implementation that can be handled simply using macros and primitives.

**Let(\$token1,\$token2) ;**

Gives \$token1 the same 'meaning' (definition) as \$token2; like TeX's \let.

**Argument Readers****ReadParameters (\$gullet, \$spec) ;**

Reads from `$gullet` the tokens corresponding to `$spec` (a Parameters object).

**DefParameterType (\$type, CODE (\$gullet, @values) , %options) ;**

Defines a new Parameter type, `$type`, with `CODE` for its reader.

Options are:

**reversion=>CODE(\$arg, @values);**

This `CODE` is responsible for converting a previously parsed argument back into a sequence of Token's.

**optional=>boolean**

whether it is an error if no matching input is found.

**novalue=>boolean**

whether the value returned should contribute to argument lists, or simply be passed over.

**semiverbatim=>boolean**

whether the catcode table should be modified before reading tokens.

**DefColumnType (\$proto, \$expansion) ;**

Defines a new column type for tabular and arrays. `$proto` is the prototype for the pattern, analogous to the pattern used for other definitions, except that macro being defined is a single character. The `$expansion` is a string specifying what it should expand into, typically more verbose column specification.

**Access to State****\$value = LookupValue (\$name) ;**

Lookup the current value associated with the the string `$name`.

**AssignValue (\$name, \$value, \$scope) ;**

Assign `$value` to be associated with the the string `$name`, according to the given scoping rule.

Values are also used to specify most configuration parameters (which can therefor also be scoped). The recognized configuration parameters are:

VERBOSITY	: the level of verbosity for debugging output, with 0 being default.
STRICT	: whether errors (eg. undefined macros) are fatal.
INCLUDE_COMMENTS	: whether to preserve comments in the

source, and to add occasional line number comments. (Default true).

`PRESERVE_NEWLINES` : whether newlines in the source should be preserved (not 100% TeX-like). By default this is true.

`SEARCHPATHS` : a list of directories to search for sources, implementations, etc.

**`PushValue($type,$name,@values);`**

This is like `AssignValue`, but pushes values onto the end of the value, which should be a LIST reference. Scoping is not handled here (yet?), it simply pushes the value onto the last binding of `$name`.

**`UnshiftValue($type,$name,@values);`**

Similar to `PushValue`, but pushes a value onto the front of the values, which should be a LIST reference.

**`$value = LookupCatcode($char);`**

Lookup the current catcode associated with the the character `$char`.

**`AssignCatcode($char,$catcode,$scope);`**

Set `$char` to have the given `$catcode`, with the assignment made according to the given scoping rule.

This method is also used to specify whether a given character is active in math mode, by using `math:$char` for the character, and using a value of 1 to specify that it is active.

**`$meaning = LookupMeaning($token);`**

Looks up the current meaning of the given `$token` which may be a Definition, another token, or the token itself if it has not otherwise been defined.

**`$defn = LookupDefinition($token);`**

Looks up the current definition, if any, of the `$token`.

**`InstallDefinition($defn);`**

Install the Definition `$defn` into `$STATE` under its control sequence.

## Font Encoding

**`DeclareFontMap($name,$map,%options);`**

Declares a font map for the encoding `$name`. The map `$map` is an array of 128 or 256 entries, each element is either a unicode string for the representation of that codepoint, or `undef` if that codepoint is not supported by this encoding. The only option currently is `family` used because some fonts (notably `cmr`!) have different glyphs in some font families, such as `family='typewriter'>`.

**FontDecode (\$code, \$encoding, \$implicit) ;**

Returns the unicode string representing the given codepoint `$code` (an integer) in the given font encoding `$encoding`. If `$encoding` is undefined, the usual case, the current font encoding and font family is used for the lookup. Explicit decoding is used when `\\char` or similar are invoked (`$implicit` is false), and the codepoint must be represented in the fontmap, otherwise `undef` is returned. Implicit decoding (ie. `$implicit` is true) occurs within the Stomach when a Token's content is being digested and converted to a Box; in that case only the lower 128 codepoints are converted; all codepoints above 128 are assumed to already be Unicode.

The font map for `$encoding` is automatically loaded if it has not already been loaded.

**LoadFontMap (\$encoding) ;**

Finds and loads the font map for the encoding named `$encoding`, if it hasn't been loaded before. It looks for `encoding.fontmap.ltxml`, which would typically define the font map using `DeclareFontMap`, possibly including extra maps for families like `typewriter`.

**Low-level Functions****CleanLabel (\$label, \$prefix) ;**

Cleans a `$label` of disallowed characters, prepending `$prefix` (or `LABEL`, if none given).

**CleanIndexKey (\$key) ;**

Cleans an index key, so it can be used as an ID.

**CleanBibKey (\$key) ;**

Cleans a bibliographic citation key, so it can be used as an ID.

**CleanURL (\$url) ;**

Cleans a url.

**UTF (\$code) ;**

Generates a UTF character, handy for the the 8 bit characters. For example, `UTF (0xA0)` generates the non-breaking space.

**MergeFont (%style) ;**

Set the current font by merging the font style attributes with the current font. The attributes and likely values (the values aren't required to be in this set):

```
family : serif, sansserif, typewriter, caligraphic,
        fraktur, script
series : medium, bold
```

```
shape : upright, italic, slanted, smallcaps
size  : tiny, footnote, small, normal, large,
       Large, LARGE, huge, Huge
color  : any named color, default is black
```

Some families will only be used in math. This function returns nothing so it can be easily used in `beforeDigest`, `afterDigest`.

**@tokens = roman(\$number);**

Formats the `$number` in (lowercase) roman numerals, returning a list of the tokens.

**@tokens = Roman(\$number);**

Formats the `$number` in (uppercase) roman numerals, returning a list of the tokens.

## C.7 LaTeXML::Parameters

Formal parameters, including LaTeXML::Parameter.

### C.7.1 Description

Provides a representation for the formal parameters of `LaTeXML::Definitions`:

#### **LaTeXML::Parameter**

represents an individual parameter.

#### **Parameters Methods**

**\$parameters = parseParameters(\$prototype,\$for);**

Parses a string for a sequence of parameter specifications. Each specification should be of the form

```
{}
```

 reads a regular TeX argument, a sequence of tokens delimited by braces, or a single token.

```
{spec}
```

 reads a regular TeX argument, then reparses it to match the given spec. The spec is parsed recursively, but usually should correspond to a single argument.

```
[spec]
```

 reads an LaTeX-style optional argument. If the spec is of the form `Default:stuff`, then `stuff` would be the default value.

```
Type
```

 Reads an argument of the given type, where either `Type` has been declared, or there exists a `ReadType` function accessible from `LaTeXML::Package::Pool`.

```
Type:value, or Type:value1:value2...
```

 These forms pass additional Tokens to the reader function.

```
OptionalType
```

 Similar to `Type`, but it is not considered an error if the reader returns `undef`.

```
SkipType
```

 Similar to `OptionalType`, but the value returned from the reader is ignored, and does not occupy a position in the arguments list.

**@parameters = \$parameters->getParameters;**

Return the list of `LaTeXML::Parameter` contained in `$parameters`.

**@tokens = \$parameters->revertArguments(@args);**

Return a list of `LaTeXML::Token` that would represent the arguments such that they can be parsed by the Gullet.



```
@args = $parameters->readArguments($gullet,$fordefn);
```

Read the arguments according to this `$parameters` from the `$gullet`. This takes into account any special forms of arguments, such as optional, delimited, etc.

```
@args = $parameters->readArgumentsAndDigest($stomach,$fordefn);
```

Reads and digests the arguments according to this `$parameters`, in sequence. this method is used by Constructors.

## C.8 LaTeXML::State

Stores the current state of processing.

### C.8.1 Description

A `LaTeXML::State` object stores the current state of processing. It recording cat-codes, variables values, definitions and so forth, as well as mimicing TeX's scoping rules.

#### Access to State and Processing

**`$STATE->getStomach;`**

Returns the current Stomach used for digestion.

**`$STATE->getModel;`**

Returns the current Model representing the document model.

#### Scoping

The assignment methods, described below, generally take a `$scope` argument, which determines how the assignment is made. The allowed values and thier implications are:

```
global    : global assignment.
local     : local assignment, within the current grouping.
undef     : global if \global preceded, else local (default)
<name>    : stores the assignment in a 'scope' which
             can be loaded later.
```

If no scoping is specified, then the assignment will be global if a preceding `\global` has set the global flag, otherwise the value will be assigned within the current grouping.

**`$STATE->pushFrame;`**

Starts a new level of grouping. Note that this is lower level than `\bgroup`; See [LaTeXML::Stomach](#).

**`$STATE->popFrame;`**

Ends the current level of grouping. Note that this is lower level than `\egroup`; See [LaTeXML::Stomach](#).

**`$STATE->setPrefix($prefix);`**

Sets a prefix (eg. `global` for `\global`, etc) for the next operation, if applicable.

**`$STATE->clearPrefixes;`**

Clears any prefixes.

**Values**

**`$value = $STATE->lookupValue($name);`**

Lookup the current value associated with the the string `$name`.

**`$STATE->assignValue($name, $value, $scope);`**

Assign `$value` to be associated with the the string `$name`, according to the given scoping rule.

Values are also used to specify most configuration parameters (which can therefor also be scoped). The recognized configuration parameters are:

VERBOSITY	: the level of verbosity for debugging output, with 0 being default.
STRICT	: whether errors (eg. undefined macros) are fatal.
INCLUDE_COMMENTS	: whether to preserve comments in the source, and to add occasional line number comments. (Default true).
PRESERVE_NEWLINES	: whether newlines in the source should be preserved (not 100% TeX-like). By default this is true.
SEARCHPATHS	: a list of directories to search for sources, implementations, etc.

**`$STATE->pushValue($name, $value);`**

This is like `->assign`, but pushes a value onto the end of the stored value, which should be a LIST reference. Scoping is not handled here (yet?), it simply pushes the value onto the last binding of `$name`.

**`$bool = $STATE->isValuebound($type, $name, $frame);`**

Returns whether the value `$name` is bound. If `$frame` is given, check whether it is bound in the `$frame`-th frame, with 0 being the top frame.

**Category Codes**

**`$value = $STATE->lookupCatcode($char);`**

Lookup the current catcode associated with the the character `$char`.

**`$STATE->assignCatcode($char, $catcode, $scope);`**

Set `$char` to have the given `$catcode`, with the assignment made according to the given scoping rule.

This method is also used to specify whether a given character is active in math mode, by using `math:$char` for the character, and using a value of 1 to specify that it is active.

## Definitions

**\$defn = \$STATE->lookupMeaning(\$token);**

Get the "meaning" currently associated with \$token, either the definition (if it is a control sequence or active character) or the token itself if it shouldn't be executable. (See [LaTeXML::Definition](#))

**\$STATE->assignMeaning(\$token, \$defn, \$scope);**

Set the definition associated with \$token to \$defn. If \$globally is true, it makes this the global definition rather than bound within the current group. (See [LaTeXML::Definition](#), and [LaTeXML::Package](#))

**\$STATE->installDefinition(\$definition, \$scope);**

Install the definition into the current stack frame under its normal control sequence.

## Named Scopes

Named scopes can be used to set variables or redefine control sequences within a scope other than the standard TeX grouping. For example, the LaTeX implementation will automatically activate any definitions that were defined with a named scope of, say "section:4", during the portion of the document that has the section counter equal to 4. Similarly, a scope named "label:foo" will be activated in portions of the document where `\label{foo}` is in effect.

**\$STATE->activateScope(\$scope);**

Installs any definitions that were associated with the named \$scope. Note that these are placed in the current grouping frame and will disappear when that grouping ends.

**\$STATE->deactivateScope(\$scope);**

Removes any definitions that were associated with the named \$scope. Normally not needed, since a scopes definitions are locally bound anyway.

**\$sp = \$STATE->convertUnit(\$unit);**

Converts a TeX unit of the form '10em' (or whatever TeX unit) into scaled points. (Defined here since in principle it could track the size of ems and so forth (but currently doesn't))

## C.9 LaTeXML::Token

Representation of a token, and LaTeXML::Tokens, representing lists of tokens.

### C.9.1 Description

This module defines Tokens (LaTeXML::Token, LaTeXML::Tokens) that get created during tokenization and expansion.

A LaTeXML::Token represents a TeX token which is a pair of a character or string and a category code. A LaTeXML::Tokens is a list of tokens (and also implements the API of a LaTeXML::Mouth so that tokens can be read from a list).

#### Common methods

The following methods apply to all objects.

**@tokens = \$object->unlist;**

Return a list of the tokens making up this \$object.

**\$string = \$object->toString;**

Return a string representing \$object.

#### Token methods

The following methods are specific to LaTeXML::Token.

**\$string = \$token->getCSName;**

Return the string or character part of the \$token; for the special category codes, returns the standard string (eg. T\_BEGIN-getCSName>returns "{").

**\$string = \$token->getString;**

Return the string or character part of the \$token.

**\$code = \$token->getCharcode;**

Return the character code of the character part of the \$token, or 256 if it is a control sequence.

**\$code = \$token->getCatcode;**

Return the catcode of the \$token.

#### Tokens methods

The following methods are specific to LaTeXML::Tokens.

**\$tokenscopy = \$tokens->clone;**

Return a shallow copy of the \$tokens. This is useful before reading from a LaTeXML::Tokens.

```
$token = $tokens->readToken;
```

Returns (and remove) the next token from \$tokens. This is part of the public API of `LaTeXML::Mouth` so that a `LaTeXML::Tokens` can serve as a `LaTeXML::Mouth`.

## C.10 LaTeXML::Box

Representations of digested objects.

### C.10.1 Description

These represent various kinds of digested objects

#### **LaTeXML::Box**

represents text in a particular font;

#### **LaTeXML::MathBox**

represents a math token in a particular font;

#### **LaTeXML::List**

represents a sequence of digested things in text;

#### **LaTeXML::MathList**

represents a sequence of digested things in math;

#### **LaTeXML::Whatsit**

represents a digested object that can generate arbitrary elements in the XML Document.

#### Common Methods

All these classes extend `LaTeXML::Object` and so implement the `stringify` and `equals` operations.

**\$font = \$digested->getFont;**

Returns the font used by \$digested.

**\$boole = \$digested->isMath;**

Returns whether \$digested was created in math mode.

**@boxes = \$digested->unlist;**

Returns a list of the boxes contained in \$digested. It is also defined for the Boxes and Whatsit (which just return themselves) so they can stand-in for a List.

**\$string = \$digested->toString;**

Returns a string representing this \$digested.

**\$string = \$digested->revert;**

Reverts the box to the list of Tokens that created (or could have created) it.

**\$string = \$digested->getLocator;**

Get a string describing the location in the original source that gave rise to \$digested.

**`$digested->beAbsorbed($document);`**

`$digested` should get itself absorbed into the `$document` in whatever way is appropriate.

### Box Methods

The following methods are specific to `LaTeXML::Box` and `LaTeXML::MathBox`.

**`$string = $box->getString;`**

Returns the string part of the `$box`.

### Whatsit Methods

Note that the font is stored in the data properties under 'font'.

**`$defn = $whatsit->getDefinition;`**

Returns the `LaTeXML::Definition` responsible for creating `$whatsit`.

**`$value = $whatsit->getProperty($key);`**

Returns the value associated with `$key` in the `$whatsit`'s property list.

**`$whatsit->setProperty($key, $value);`**

Sets the `$value` associated with the `$key` in the `$whatsit`'s property list.

**`$props = $whatsit->getProperties();`**

Returns the hash of properties stored on this Whatsit. (Note that this hash is modifiable).

**`$props = $whatsit->setProperties(%keysvalues);`**

Sets several properties, like `setProperty`.

**`$list = $whatsit->getArg($n);`**

Returns the `$n`-th argument (starting from 1) for this `$whatsit`.

**`@args = $whatsit->getArgs;`**

Returns the list of arguments for this `$whatsit`.

**`$whatsit->setArgs(@args);`**

Sets the list of arguments for this `$whatsit` to `@args` (each arg should be a `LaTeXML::List` or `LaTeXML::MathList`).

**`$list = $whatsit->getBody;`**

Return the body for this `$whatsit`. This is only defined for environments or top-level math formula. The body is stored in the properties under 'body'.



**`$whatsit->setBody(@body);`**

Sets the body of the `$whatsit` to the boxes in `@body`. The last `$box` in `@body` is assumed to represent the ‘trailer’, that is the result of the invocation that closed the environment or math. It is stored separately in the properties under ‘trailer’.

**`$list = $whatsit->getTrailer;`**

Return the trailer for this `$whatsit`. See `setBody`.

## C.11 LaTeXML::Number

Representation of numbers, dimensions, skips and glue.

### C.11.1 Description

This module defines various dimension and number-like data objects

#### **LaTeXML::Number**

represents numbers,

#### **LaTeXML::Float**

represents floating-point numbers,

#### **LaTeXML::Dimension**

represents dimensions,

#### **LaTeXML::MuDimension**

represents math dimensions,

#### **LaTeXML::Glue**

represents glue (skips),

#### **LaTeXML::MuGlue**

represents math glue,

#### **LaTeXML::Pair**

represents pairs of numbers

#### **LaTeXML::Pairlist**

represents list of pairs.

#### **Common methods**

The following methods apply to all objects.

**@tokens = \$object->unlist;**

Return a list of the tokens making up this \$object.

**\$string = \$object->toString;**

Return a string representing \$object.

**\$string = \$object->ptValue;**

Return a value representing \$object without the measurement unit (pt) with limited decimal places.

**Numerics methods**

These methods apply to the various numeric objects

**`$n = $object->valueOf;`**

Return the value in scaled points (ignoring shrink and stretch, if any).

**`$n = $object->smaller($other);`**

Return `$object` or `$other`, whichever is smaller

**`$n = $object->larger($other);`**

Return `$object` or `$other`, whichever is larger

**`$n = $object->absolute;`**

Return an object representing the absolute value of the `$object`.

**`$n = $object->sign;`**

Return an integer: -1 for negatives, 0 for 0 and 1 for positives

**`$n = $object->negate;`**

Return an object representing the negative of the `$object`.

**`$n = $object->add($other);`**

Return an object representing the sum of `$object` and `$other`

**`$n = $object->subtract($other);`**

Return an object representing the difference between `$object` and `$other`

**`$n = $object->multiply($n);`**

Return an object representing the product of `$object` and `$n` (a regular number).

## C.12 LaTeXML::Font

Representation of fonts, along with the specialization LaTeXML::MathFont.

### C.12.1 Description

This module defines Font objects. I'm not completely happy with the arrangement, or maybe just the use of it, so I'm not going to document extensively at this point.

LaTeXML::Font and LaTeXML::MathFont represent fonts (the latter, fonts in math-mode, obviously) in LaTeXML.

The attributes are

```
family : serif, sansserif, typewriter, caligraphic,
        fraktur, script
series : medium, bold
shape  : upright, italic, slanted, smallcaps
size   : tiny, footnote, small, normal, large,
        Large, LARGE, huge, Huge
color  : any named color, default is black
```

They are usually merged against the current font, attempting to mimic the, sometimes counter-intuitive, way that TeX does it, particularly for math

#### LaTeXML::MathFont

LaTeXML::MathFont supports `$font-specialize($string);>` for computing a font reflecting how the specific `$string` would be printed when `$font` is active; This (attempts to) handle the curious ways that lower case greek often doesn't get a different font. In particular, it recognizes the following classes of strings: single latin letter, single uppercase greek character, single lowercase greek character, digits, and others.

## C.13 `LaTeXML::Mouth`

Tokenize the input.

### C.13.1 Description

A `LaTeXML::Mouth` (and subclasses) is responsible for *tokenizing*, ie. converting plain text and strings into `LaTeXML::Tokens` according to the current category codes (catcodes) stored in the `LaTeXML::State`.

#### `LaTeXML::FileMouth`

specializes `LaTeXML::Mouth` to tokenize from a file.

#### `LaTeXML::StyleMouth`

further specializes `LaTeXML::FileMouth` for processing style files, setting the catcode for `@` and ignoring comments.

#### `LaTeXML::PerlMouth`

is not really a `Mouth` in the above sense, but is used to definitions from perl modules with extensions `.ltxml` and `.latexml`.

### Creating Mouths

```
$mouth = LaTeXML::Mouth->new($string);
```

Creates a new `Mouth` reading from `$string`.

```
$mouth = LaTeXML::FileMouth->new($pathname);
```

Creates a new `FileMouth` to read from the given file.

```
$mouth = LaTeXML::StyleMouth->new($pathname);
```

Creates a new `StyleMouth` to read from the given style file.

### Methods

```
$token = $mouth->readToken;
```

Returns the next `LaTeXML::Token` from the source.

```
$boole = $mouth->hasMoreInput;
```

Returns whether there is more data to read.

```
$string = $mouth->getLocator($long);
```

Return a description of current position in the source, for reporting errors.

```
$tokens = $mouth->readTokens($until);
```

Reads tokens until one matches `$until` (comparing the character, but not catcode). This is useful for the `\verb` command.

```
$lines = $mouth->readRawLines($endline,$exact);
```

Reads raw (untokenized) lines from `$mouth` until a line matching `$endline` is found. If `$exact` is true, `$endline` is matched exactly, with no leading or trailing data (like in the `c<comment>package`). Otherwise, the match is done like with the `c<verbatim>environment`; any text preceding `$endline` is returned as the last line, and any characters after `$endline` remains in the mouth to be tokenized.

## C.14 `LaTeXML::Gullet`

Expands expandable tokens and parses common token sequences.

### C.14.1 Description

A `LaTeXML::Gullet` reads tokens (`LaTeXML::Token`) from a `LaTeXML::Mouth`. It is responsible for expanding macros and expandable control sequences, if the current definition associated with the token in the `LaTeXML::State` is an `LaTeXML::Expandable` definition. The `LaTeXML::Gullet` also provides a variety of methods for reading various types of input such as arguments, optional arguments, as well as for parsing `LaTeXML::Number`, `LaTeXML::Dimension`, etc, according to TeX's rules.

#### Managing Input

**`$gullet->openMouth($mouth, $noautoclose);`**

Is this public? Prepares to read tokens from `$mouth`. If `$noautoclose` is true, the `Mouth` will not be automatically closed when it is exhausted.

**`$gullet->closeMouth;`**

Is this public? Finishes reading from the current mouth, and reverts to the one in effect before the last `openMouth`.

**`$gullet->flush;`**

Is this public? Clears all inputs.

**`$gullet->getLocator;`**

Returns a string describing the current location in the input stream.

#### Low-level methods

**`$tokens = $gullet->expandTokens($tokens);`**

Return the `LaTeXML::Tokens` resulting from expanding all the tokens in `$tokens`. This is actually only used in a few circumstances where the arguments to an expandable need explicit expansion; usually expansion happens at the right time.

**`@tokens = $gullet->neutralizeTokens(@tokens);`**

Another unusual method: Used for things like `\edef` and token registers, to inhibit further expansion of control sequences and proper spawning of register tokens.

**`$token = $gullet->readToken;`**

Return the next token from the input source, or undef if there is no more input.

**`$token = $gullet->readXToken($toplevel);`**

Return the next unexpandable token from the input source, or undef if there is no more input. If the next token is expandable, it is expanded, and its expansion is reinserted into the input.

**`$gullet->unread(@tokens);`**

Push the @tokens back into the input stream to be re-read.

### Mid-level methods

**`$token = $gullet->readNonSpace;`**

Read and return the next non-space token from the input after discarding any spaces.

**`$gullet->skipSpaces;`**

Skip the next spaces from the input.

**`$gullet->skip1Space;`**

Skip the next token from the input if it is a space.

**`$tokens = $gullet->readBalanced;`**

Read a sequence of tokens from the input until the balancing '}' (assuming the '{' has already been read). Returns a `LaTeXML::Tokens`.

**`$boole = $gullet->ifNext($token);`**

Returns true if the next token in the input matches \$token; the possibly matching token remains in the input.

**`$tokens = $gullet->readMatch(@choices);`**

Read and return whichever of @choices (each are `LaTeXML::Tokens`) matches the input, or undef if none do.

**`$keyword = $gullet->readKeyword(@keywords);`**

Read and return whichever of @keywords (each a string) matches the input, or undef if none do. This is similar to readMatch, but case and catcodes are ignored. Also, leading spaces are skipped.

**`$tokens = $gullet->readUntil(@delims);`**

Read and return a (balanced) sequence of `LaTeXML::Tokens` until matching one of the tokens in @delims. In a list context, it also returns which of the delimiters ended the sequence.



**High-level methods**

**\$tokens = \$gullet->readArg;**

Read and return a TeX argument; the next Token or Tokens (if surrounded by braces).

**\$tokens = \$gullet->readOptional(\$default);**

Read and return a LaTeX optional argument; returns \$default if there is no '[', otherwise the contents of the [].

**\$thing = \$gullet->readValue(\$type);**

Reads an argument of a given type: one of 'Number', 'Dimension', 'Glue', 'MuGlue' or 'any'.

**\$value = \$gullet->readRegisterValue(\$type);**

Read a control sequence token (and possibly its arguments) that names a register, and return the value. Returns undef if the next token isn't such a register.

**\$number = \$gullet->readNumber;**

Read a `LaTeXML::Number` according to TeX's rules of the various things that can be used as a numerical value.

**\$dimension = \$gullet->readDimension;**

Read a `LaTeXML::Dimension` according to TeX's rules of the various things that can be used as a dimension value.

**\$mudimension = \$gullet->readMuDimension;**

Read a `LaTeXML::MuDimension` according to TeX's rules of the various things that can be used as a mudimension value.

**\$glue = \$gullet->readGlue;**

Read a `LaTeXML::Glue` according to TeX's rules of the various things that can be used as a glue value.

**\$muglue = \$gullet->readMuGlue;**

Read a `LaTeXML::MuGlue` according to TeX's rules of the various things that can be used as a muglue value.

## C.15 LaTeXML::Stomach

Digests tokens into boxes, lists, etc.

### C.15.1 Description

LaTeXML::Stomach digests tokens read from a LaTeXML::Gullet (they will have already been expanded).

There are basically four cases when digesting a LaTeXML::Token:

#### A plain character

is simply converted to a LaTeXML::Box (or LaTeXML::MathBox in math mode), recording the current LaTeXML::Font.

#### A primitive

If a control sequence represents LaTeXML::Primitive, the primitive is invoked, executing its stored subroutine. This is typically done for side effect (changing the state in the LaTeXML::State), although they may also contribute digested material. As with macros, any arguments to the primitive are read from the LaTeXML::Gullet.

#### Grouping (or environment bodies)

are collected into a LaTeXML::List.

#### Constructors

A special class of control sequence, called a LaTeXML::Constructor produces a LaTeXML::Whatsit which remembers the control sequence and arguments that created it, and defines its own translation into XML elements, attributes and data. Arguments to a constructor are read from the gullet and also digested.

#### Digestion

**\$list = \$stomach->digestNextBody;**

Return the digested LaTeXML::List after reading and digesting a ‘body’ from the its Gullet. The body extends until the current level of boxing or environment is closed.

**\$list = \$stomach->digest(\$tokens);**

Return the LaTeXML::List resuting from digesting the given tokens. This is typically used to digest arguments to primitives or constructors.

**@boxes = \$stomach->invokeToken(\$token);**

Invoke the given (expanded) token. If it corresponds to a Primitive or Constructor, the definition will be invoked, reading any needed arguments from the current input source. Otherwise, the token will be digested. A List of Box’s, Lists, Whatsit’s is returned.

**@boxes = \$stomach->regurgitate;**

Removes and returns a list of the boxes already digested at the current level. This peculiar beast is used by things like `\choose` (which is a Primitive in TeX, but a Constructor in LaTeXML).

### Grouping

**\$stomach->bgroup;**

Begin a new level of binding by pushing a new stack frame, and a new level of boxing the digested output.

**\$stomach->egroup;**

End a level of binding by popping the last stack frame, undoing whatever bindings appeared there, and also decrementing the level of boxing.

**\$stomach->begingroup;**

Begin a new level of binding by pushing a new stack frame.

**\$stomach->endgroup;**

End a level of binding by popping the last stack frame, undoing whatever bindings appeared there.

### Modes

**\$stomach->beginMode(\$mode);**

Begin processing in `$mode`; one of 'text', 'display-math' or 'inline-math'. This also begins a new level of grouping and switches to a font appropriate for the mode.

**\$stomach->endMode(\$mode);**

End processing in `$mode`; an error is signalled if `$stomach` is not currently in `$mode`. This also ends a level of grouping.

## C.16 LaTeXML::Document

Represents an XML document under construction.

### C.16.1 Description

A `LaTeXML::Document` represents an XML document being constructed by LaTeXML, and also provides the methods for constructing it. LaTeXML will have digested the source material resulting in a `LaTeXML::List` (from a `LaTeXML::Stomach`) of `LaTeXML::Boxs`, `LaTeXML::Whatsits` and sublists. At this stage, a document is created and it is responsible for ‘absorbing’ the digested material. Generally, the `LaTeXML::Boxs` and `LaTeXML::Lists` create text nodes, whereas the `LaTeXML::Whatsits` create XML document fragments, elements and attributes according to the defining `LaTeXML::Constructor`.

Most document construction occurs at a *current insertion point* where material will be added, and which moves along with the inserted material. The `LaTeXML::Model`, derived from various declarations and document type, is consulted to determine whether an insertion is allowed and when elements may need to be automatically opened or closed in order to carry out a given insertion. For example, a `subsection` element will typically be closed automatically when it is attempted to open a `section` element.

In the methods described here, the term `$qname` is used for XML qualified names. These are tag names with a namespace prefix. The prefix should be one registered with the current Model, for use within the code. This prefix is not necessarily the same as the one used in any DTD, but should be mapped to the a Namespace URI that was registered for the DTD.

The arguments named `$node` are an `XML::LibXML::Node`.

The methods here are grouped into three sections covering basic access to the document, insertion methods at the current insertion point, and less commonly used, lower-level, document manipulation methods.

#### Accessors

```
$doc = $document->getDocument;
```

Returns the `XML::LibXML::Document` currently being constructed.

```
$doc = $document->getModel;
```

Returns the `XML::LibXML::Model` that represents the document model used for this document.

```
$node = $document->getNode;
```

Returns the node at the *current insertion point* during construction. This node is considered still to be ‘open’; any insertions will go into it (if possible). The node will be an `XML::LibXML::Element`, `XML::LibXML::Text` or, initially, `XML::LibXML::Document`.

**\$node = \$document->getElement;**

Returns the closest ancestor to the current insertion point that is an Element.

**\$node = \$document->getChildElement (\$node) ;**

Returns a list of the child elements, if any, of the \$node.

**@nodes = \$document->getLastChildElement (\$node) ;**

Returns the last child element of the \$node, if it has one, else undef.

**\$node = \$document->getFirstChildElement (\$node) ;**

Returns the first child element of the \$node, if it has one, else undef.

**@nodes = \$document->findnodes (\$xpath, \$node) ;**

Returns a list of nodes matching the given \$xpath expression. The *context node* for \$xpath is \$node, if given, otherwise it is the document element.

**\$node = \$document->findnode (\$xpath, \$node) ;**

Returns the first node matching the given \$xpath expression. The *context node* for \$xpath is \$node, if given, otherwise it is the document element.

**\$node = \$document->getNodeQName (\$node) ;**

Returns the qualified name (localname with namespace prefix) of the given \$node. The namespace prefix mapping is the code mapping of the current document model.

### Construction Methods

These methods are the most common ones used for construction of documents. They generally operate by creating new material at the *current insertion point*. That point initially is just the document itself, but it moves along to follow any new insertions. These methods also adapt to the document model so as to automatically open or close elements, when it is required for the pending insertion and allowed by the document model (See [Tag](#)).

**\$xmldoc = \$document->finalize;**

This method finalizes the document by cleaning up various temporary attributes, and returns the [XML::LibXML::Document](#) that was constructed.

**\$document->absorb (\$digested) ;**

Absorb the \$digested object into the document at the current insertion point according to its type. Various of the other methods are invoked as needed, and document nodes may be automatically opened or closed according to the document model.

**\$document->absorbText (\$string, \$font) ;**

Absorb the given \$string, in the specified \$font, as plain text, or a math token, depending on the current mode.

**`$document->insertElement ($qname, $content, %attributes) ;`**

This is a shorthand for creating an element `$qname` (with given attributes), absorbing `$content` from within that new node, and then closing it. The `$content` must be digested material, either a single box, or an array of boxes, which will be absorbed into the element. This method returns the newly created node, although it will no longer be the current insertion point.

**`$document->insertMathToken ($string, %attributes) ;`**

Insert a math token (XMTok) containing the string `$string` with the given attributes. Useful attributes would be name, role, font. Returns the newly inserted node.

**`$document->insertComment ($text) ;`**

Insert, and return, a comment with the given `$text` into the current node.

**`$document->insertPI ($op, %attributes) ;`**

Insert, and return, a ProcessingInstruction into the current node.

**`$document->openText ($text, $font) ;`**

Open a text node in font `$font`, performing any required automatic opening and closing of intermediate nodes (including those needed for font changes) and inserting the string `$text` into it.

**`$document->openElement ($qname, %attributes) ;`**

Open an element, named `$qname` and with the given attributes. This will be inserted into the current node while performing any required automatic opening and closing of intermediate nodes. The new element is returned, and also becomes the current insertion point. An error (fatal if in `Strict` mode) is signalled if there is no allowed way to insert such an element into the current node.

**`$document->closeElement ($qname) ;`**

Close the closest open element named `$qname` including any intermediate nodes that may be automatically closed. If that is not possible, signal an error. The closed node's parent becomes the current node. This method returns the closed node.

**`$node = $document->isOpenable ($qname) ;`**

Check whether it is possible to open a `$qname` element at the current insertion point.

**`$node = $document->isCloseable ($qname) ;`**

Check whether it is possible to close a `$qname` element, returning the node that would be closed if possible, otherwise `undef`.

**`$document->maybeCloseElement ($qname) ;`**

Close a `$qname` element, if it is possible to do so, returns the closed node if it was found, else `undef`.

**`$document->addAttribute($key=>$value);`**

Add the given attribute to the node nearest to the current insertion point that is allowed to have it. This does not change the current insertion point.

**Internal Insertion Methods** These are described as an aide to understanding the code; they rarely, if ever, should be used outside this module.

**`$document->setNode($node);`**

Sets the *current insertion point* to be `$node`. This should be rarely used, if at all; The construction methods of document generally maintain the notion of insertion point automatically. This may be useful to allow insertion into a different part of the document, but you probably want to set the insertion point back to the previous node, afterwards.

**`$string = $document->getInsertionContext($levels);`**

For debugging, return a string showing the context of the current insertion point; that is, the string of the nodes leading up to it. if `$levels` is defined, show only that many nodes.

**`$node = $document->find_insertion_point($qname);`**

This internal method is used to find the appropriate point, relative to the current insertion point, that an element with the specified `$qname` can be inserted. That position may require automatic opening or closing of elements, according to what is allowed by the document model.

**`@nodes = getInsertionCandidates($node);`**

Returns a list of elements where an arbitrary insertion might take place. Roughly this is a list starting with `$node`, followed by its parent and the parents siblings (in reverse order), followed by the grandparent and siblings (in reverse order).

**`$node = $document->floatToElement($qname);`**

Finds the nearest element at or preceding the current insertion point (see `getInsertionCandidates`), that can accept an element `$qname`; it moves the insertion point to that point, and returns the previous insertion point. Generally, after doing whatever you need at the new insertion point, you should call `$document->setNode($node);` to restore the insertion point. If no such point is found, the insertion point is left unchanged, and `undef` is returned.

**`$node = $document->floatToAttribute($key);`**

This method works the same as `floatToElement`, but find the nearest element that can accept the attribute `$key`.

**`$node = $document->openText_internal($text);`**

This is an internal method, used by `openText`, that assumes the insertion point has been appropriately adjusted.)

**`$node = $document->openMathText_internal($text);`**

This internal method appends `$text` to the current insertion point, which is assumed to be a math node. It checks for math ligatures and carries out any combinations called for.

**`$node = $document->closeText_internal();`**

This internal method closes the current node, which should be a text node. It carries out any text ligatures on the content.

**`$node = $document->closeNode_internal($node);`**

This internal method closes any open text or element nodes starting at the current insertion point, up to and including `$node`. Afterwards, the parent of `$node` will be the current insertion point. It condenses the tree to avoid redundant font switching elements.

**`$document->afterOpen($node);`**

Carries out any `afterOpen` operations that have been recorded (using `Tag`) for the element name of `$node`.

**`$document->afterClose($node);`**

Carries out any `afterClose` operations that have been recorded (using `Tag`) for the element name of `$node`.

### Document Modification

The following methods are used to perform various sorts of modification and rearrangements of the document, after the normal flow of insertion has taken place. These may be needed after an environment (or perhaps the whole document) has been completed and one needs to analyze what it contains to decide on the appropriate representation.

**`$document->setAttribute($node, $key, $value);`**

Sets the attribute `$key` to `$value` on `$node`. This method is preferred over the direct LibXML one, since it takes care of decoding namespaces (if `$key` is a qname), and also manages recording of `xml:id`'s.

**`$document->recordID($id, $node);`**

Records the association of the given `$node` with the `$id`, which should be the `xml:id` attribute of the `$node`. Usually this association will be maintained by the methods that create nodes or set attributes.

**`$document->unRecordID($id);`**

Removes the node associated with the given `$id`, if any. This might be needed if a node is deleted.

**`$document->modifyID($id);`**

Adjusts `$id`, if needed, so that it is unique. It does this by appending a letter and incrementing until it finds an id that is not yet associated with a node.



**\$node = \$document->lookupID(\$id);**

Returns the node, if any, that is associated with the given \$id.

**\$document->setNodeBox(\$node, \$box);**

Records the \$box (being a Box, Whatsit or List), that was (presumably) responsible for the creation of the element \$node. This information is useful for determining source locations, original TeX strings, and so forth.

**\$box = \$document->getNodeBox(\$node);**

Returns the \$box that was responsible for creating the element \$node.

**\$document->setNodeFont(\$node, \$font);**

Records the font object that encodes the font that should be used to display any text within the element \$node.

**\$font = \$document->getNodeFont(\$node);**

Returns the font object associated with the element \$node.

**\$node = \$document->openElementAt(\$point, \$qname, %attributes);**

Opens a new child element in \$point with the qualified name \$qname and with the given attributes. This method is not affected by, nor does it affect, the current insertion point. It does manage namespaces, xml:id's and associating a box, font and locator with the new element, as well as running any afterOpen operations.

**\$node = \$document->closeElementAt(\$node);**

Closes \$node. This method is not affected by, nor does it affect, the current insertion point. However, it does run any afterClose operations, so any element that was created using the lower-level openElementAt should be closed using this method.

**\$node = \$document->appendClone(\$node, @newchildren);**

Appends clones of @newchildren to \$node. This method modifies any ids found within @newchildren (using modifyID), and fixes up any references to those ids within the clones so that they refer to the modified id.

**\$node = \$document->wrapNodes(\$qname, @nodes);**

This method wraps the @nodes by a new element with qualified name \$qname, that new node replaces the first of @node. The remaining nodes in @nodes must be following siblings of the first one.

NOTE: Does this need multiple nodes? If so, perhaps some kind of movenodes helper? Otherwise, what about attributes?

**\$node = \$document->unwrapNodes(\$node);**

Unwrap the children of \$node, by replacing \$node by its children.

**`$node = $document->replaceNode($node,@nodes);`**

Replace `$node` by `@nodes`; presumably they are some sort of descendant nodes.

**`$node = $document->renameNode($node,$newname);`**

Rename `$node` to the tagname `$newname`; equivalently replace `$node` by a new node with name `$newname` and copy the attributes and contents. It is assumed that `$newname` can contain those attributes and contents.

## C.17 `LaTeXML::Model`

Represents the Document Model

### C.17.1 Description

`LaTeXML::Model` encapsulates information about the document model to be used in converting a digested document into XML by the `LaTeXML::Document`. This information is based on the document schema (eg, DTD, RelaxNG), but is also modified by package modules; thus the model may not be complete until digestion is completed.

The kinds of information that is relevant is not only the content model (what each element can contain), but also SGML-like information such as whether an element can be implicitly opened or closed, if needed to insert a new element into the document.

Currently, only an approximation to the schema is understood and used. For example, we only record that certain elements can appear within another; we don't preserve any information about required order or number of instances.

#### Model Creation

```
$model = LaTeXML::Model->new(%options);
```

Creates a new model. The only useful option is `permissive=>1` which ignores any DTD and allows the document to be built without following any particular content model.

#### Document Type

```
$model->setDocType($rootname,$publicid,$systemid,%namespaces);
```

Declares the expected rootelement, the public and system ID's of the document type to be used in the final document. The hash `%namespaces` specifies the namespace prefixes that are expected to be found in the DTD, along with the associated namespace URI. These prefixes may be different from the prefixes used in implementation code (eg. in `ltxml` files; see `RegisterNamespace`). The generated document will use the namespaces and prefixes defined here.

#### Namespaces

Note that there are *two* namespace mappings between namespace URIs and prefixes that are relevant to `LaTeXML`. The 'code' mapping is the one used in code implementing packages, and in particular, constructors defined within those packages. The prefix `ltx` is used consistently to refer to `LaTeXML`'s own namespace (<http://dlmf.nist.gov/LaTeXML>).

The other mapping, the 'document' mapping, is used in the created document; this may be different from the 'code' mapping in order to accommodate DTDs, for example, or for use by other applications that expect a rigid namespace mapping.

**`$model->registerNamespace($prefix, $namespace_url);`**

Register `$prefix` to stand for the namespace `$namespace_url`. This prefix can then be used to create nodes in constructors and Document methods. It will also be recognized in XPath expressions.

**`$model->getNamespacePrefix($namespace, $forattribute, $probe);`**

Return the prefix to use for the given `$namespace`. If `$forattribute` is nonzero, then it looks up the prefix as appropriate for attributes. If `$probe` is nonzero, it only probes for the prefix, without creating a missing entry.

**`$model->getNamespace($prefix, $probe);`**

Return the namespace url for the given `$prefix`.

### Model queries

**`$boole = $model->canContain($tag, $childtag);`**

Returns whether an element with qualified name `$tag` can contain an element with qualified name `$childtag`. The tag names `#PCDATA`, `#Document`, `#Comment` and `#ProcessingInstruction` are specially recognized.

**`$auto = $model->canContainIndirect($tag, $childtag);`**

Checks whether an element with qualified name `$tag` could contain an element with qualified name `$childtag`, provided an ‘autoOpen’able element `$auto` were inserted in `$tag`.

**`$boole = $model->canContainSomehow($tag, $childtag);`**

Returns whether an element with qualified name `$tag` could contain an element with qualified name `$childtag`, either directly or indirectly.

**`$boole = $model->canAutoClose($tag);`**

Returns whether an element with qualified name `$tag` is allowed to be closed automatically, if needed.

**`$boole = $model->canHaveAttribute($tag, $attribute);`**

Returns whether an element with qualified name `$tag` is allowed to have an attribute with the given name.

### Tag Properties

**`$value = $model->getTagProperty($tag, $property);`**

Gets the value of the `$property` associated with the qualified name `$tag`. Known properties are:

autoOpen : This asserts that the tag is allowed to be opened automatically if needed to insert some other element. If not set, the tag can only be opened explicitly.  
 autoClose : This asserts that the \$tag is allowed to be closed automatically if needed to insert some other element. If not set, the tag can only be closed explicitly.  
 afterOpen : supplies code to be executed whenever an element of this type is opened. It is called with the created node and the responsible digested object as arguments.  
 afterClose : supplies code to be executed whenever an element of this type is closed. It is called with the created node and the responsible digested object as arguments.

**\$model->setTagProperty(\$tag, \$property, \$value);**

sets the value of the \$property associated with the qualified name \$tag to \$value.

### Rewrite Rules

**\$model->addRewriteRule(\$mode, @specs);**

Install a new rewrite rule with the given @specs to be used in \$mode (being either math or text). See [LaTeXML::Rewrite](#) for a description of the specifications.

**\$model->applyRewrites(\$document, \$node, \$until\_rule);**

Apply all matching rewrite rules to \$node in the given document. If \$until\_rule is define, apply all those rules that were defined before it, otherwise, all rules

## **C.18 LaTeXML::Rewrite**

Rewrite rules for modifying the XML document.

### **C.18.1 Description**

`LaTeXML::Rewrite` implements rewrite rules for modifying the XML document.

#### **Methods**

```
$rule->rewrite($document, $node);
```

## C.19 `LaTeXML::MathParser`

Parses mathematics content

### C.19.1 Description

`LaTeXML::MathParser` parses the mathematical content of a document. It uses `Parse::RecDescent` and a grammar `MathGrammar`.

#### Math Representation

Needs description.

#### Possible Customizations

Needs description.

#### Convenience functions

The following functions are exported for convenience in writing the grammar productions.

**`$node = New($name,$content,%attributes);`**

Creates a new `XMTok` node with given `$name` (a string or undef), and `$content` (a string or undef) (but at least one of name or content should be provided), and attributes.

**`$node = Arg($node,$n);`**

Returns the `$n`-th argument of an `XMApp` node; 0 is the operator node.

**`Annotate($node,%attributes);`**

Add attributes to `$node`.

**`$node = Apply($op,@args);`**

Create a new `XMApp` node representing the application of the node `$op` to the nodes `@args`.

**`$node = ApplyDelimited($op,@stuff);`**

Create a new `XMApp` node representing the application of the node `$op` to the arguments found in `@stuff`. `@stuff` are delimited arguments in the sense that the leading and trailing nodes should represent open and close delimiters and the arguments are separated by punctuation nodes. The text of these delimiters and punctuation are used to annotate the operator node with `argopen`, `argclose` and `separator` attributes.

**\$node = recApply(@ops,\$arg);**

Given a sequence of operators and an argument, forms the nested application  $\text{op}(\text{op}(\dots(\text{arg}))>$ .

**\$node = InvisibleTimes;**

Creates an invisible times operator.

**\$boole = isMatchingClose(\$open,\$close);**

Checks whether \$open and \$close form a ‘normal’ pair of delimiters, or if either is ”.”.

**\$node = Fence(@stuff);**

Given a delimited sequence of nodes, starting and ending with open/close delimiters, and with intermediate nodes separated by punctuation or such, attempt to guess what type of thing is represented such as a set, absolute value, interval, and so on. If nothing specific is recognized, creates the application of `FENCED` to the arguments.

This would be a good candidate for customization!

**\$node = NewFormulae(@stuff);**

Given a set of formulas, construct a `Formulae` application, if there are more than one, else just return the first.

**\$node = NewList(@stuff);**

Given a set of expressions, construct a `list` application, if there are more than one, else just return the first.

**\$node = LeftRec(\$arg1,@more);**

Given an expr followed by repeated (op expr), compose the left recursive tree. For example  $a + b + c - d$  would give  $(- (+ a b c) d) >$

**Problem(\$text);**

Warn of a potential math parsing problem.

**MaybeFunction(\$token);**

Note the possible use of \$token as a function, which may cause incorrect parsing. This is used to generate warning messages.



## C.20 LaTeXML::Bib

Implements a BibTeX parser for LaTeXML.

### C.20.1 Description

`LaTeXML::Bib` serves as a low-level parser of BibTeX database files. It parses and stores a `LaTeXML::Bib::BibEntry` for each entry into the current STATE. BibTeX string macros are substituted into the field values, but no other processing of the data is done. See `LaTeXML::Package::BibTeX.pool.ltxml` for how further processing is carried out, and can be customized.

#### Creating a Bib

```
my $bib = LaTeXML::Bib->newFromFile($bibname);
```

Creates a `LaTeXML::Bib` object representing a bibliography from a BibTeX database file.

```
my $bib = LaTeXML::Bib->newFromString($string);
```

Creates a `LaTeXML::Bib` object representing a bibliography from a string containing the BibTeX data.

#### Methods

```
$string = $bib->toTeX;
```

Returns a string containing the TeX code to be digested by a `LaTeXML` object to process the bibliography. The string contains all @PREAMBLE data and invocations of `\\ProcessBibTeXEntry{$key}` for each bibliographic entry. The `$key` can be used to lookup the data from STATE as `LookupValue('BIBITEM@', $key)`. See `BibTeX.pool` for how the processing is carried out.

#### BibEntry objects

The representation of a BibTeX entry.

```
$type = $bibentry->getType;
```

Returns a string naming the entry type of the entry (No aliasing is done here).

```
$key = $bibentry->getKey;
```

Returns the bibliographic key for the entry.

```
@fields = $bibentry->getFields;
```

Returns a list of pairs [`$name`, `$value`] representing all fields, in the order defined, for the entry. Both the `$name` and `$value` are strings. Field names may be repeated, if they are in the bibliography.

```
$value = $bibentry->getField($name);
```

Returns the value (or `undef`) associated with the the given field name. If the field was repeated in the bibliography, only the last one is returned.

## Appendix D

# Utility Module Documentation

### D.1 LaTeXML::Util::Pathname

Portable pathname and file-system utilities

#### D.1.1 Description

This module combines the functionality `File::Spec` and `File::Basename` to give a consistent set of filename utilities for LaTeXML. A pathname is represented by a simple string.

#### Pathname Manipulations

**`$path = pathname_make(%pieces);`**

Constructs a pathname from the keywords in pieces `dir` : directory name : the filename (possibly with extension) `type` : the filename extension

**`($dir,$name,$type) = pathname_split($path);`**

Splits the pathname `$path` into the components: directory, name and type.

**`$path = pathname_canonical($path);`**

Canonicallizes the pathname `$path` by simplifying repeated slashes, dots representing the current or parent directory, etc.

**`$dir = pathname_directory($path);`**

Returns the directory component of the pathname `$path`.

**`$name = pathname_name($path);`**

Returns the name component of the pathname `$path`.

**`$type = pathname_type($path);`**

Returns the type component of the pathname `$path`.

**`$path = pathname_concat($dir,$file);`**

Returns the pathname resulting from concatenating the directory `$dir` and filename `$file`.

**`$boole = pathname_is_absolute($path);`**

Returns whether the pathname `$path` appears to be an absolute pathname.

**`$boole = pathname_is_url($path);`**

Returns whether the pathname `$path` appears to be a url, rather than local file.

**`$rel = pathname_is_contained($path,$base);`**

Checks whether `$path` is underneath the directory `$base`; if so it returns the pathname `$path` relative to `$base`; otherwise returns `undef`.

**`$path = pathname_relative($path,$base);`**

If `$path` is an absolute, non-URL pathname, returns the pathname relative to the directory `$base`, otherwise simply returns the canonical form of `$path`.

**`$path = pathname_absolute($path,$base);`**

Returns the absolute pathname resulting from interpreting `$path` relative to the directory `$base`. If `$path` is already absolute, it is returned unchanged.

### File System Operations

**`$mtime = pathname_timestamp($path);`**

Returns the modification time of the file named by `$path`, or `undef` if the file does not exist.

**`$path = pathname_cwd();`**

Returns the current working directory.

**`$dir = pathname_mkdir($dir);`**

Creates the directory `$dir` and all missing ancestors. It returns `$dir` if successful, else `undef`.

**`$dest = pathname_copy($source,$dest);`**

Copies the file `$source` to `$dest` if needed; ie. if `$dest` is missing or older than `$source`. It preserves the timestamp of `$source`.

**`$path = pathname_find($name,%options);`**

Finds the first file named `$name` that exists and that matches the specification in the keywords `%options`. An absolute pathname is returned.

If `$name` is not already an absolute pathname, then the option `paths` determines directories to recursively search. It should be a list of pathnames, any

relative paths are interpreted relative to the current directory. If `paths` is omitted, then the current directory is searched.

If the option `installation_subdir` is given, it indicates, in addition to the above, a directory relative to the LaTeXML installation directory to search. This allows files included with the distribution to be found.

The `types` option specifies a list of filetypes to search for. If not supplied, then the filename must match exactly. The type `*` matches any extension.

```
@paths = pathname_findall($name,%options);
```

Like `pathname_find`, but returns *all* matching (absolute) paths that exist.

## D.2 LaTeXML::Util::KeyVal

Support for keyvals

### D.2.1 Description

Provides a parser and representation of keyval pairs. LaTeXML::KeyVal represents parameters handled by LaTeX's keyval package.

#### Declarations

```
DefKeyVal($keyset,$key,$type);
```

Defines the type of value expected for the key `$key` when parsed in part of a KeyVal using `$keyset`. `$type` would be something like 'any' or 'Number', but I'm still working on this.

#### Accessors

```
KeyVal($arg,$key)
```

This is useful within constructors to access the value associated with `$key` in the argument `$arg`.

```
KeyVals($arg)
```

This is useful within constructors to extract all keyvalue pairs to assign all attributes.

#### KeyVal Methods

```
$value = $keyval->getValue($key);
```

Return the value associated with `$key` in the `$keyval`.

```
@keyvals = $keyval->getKeyVals;
```

Return the hash reference containing the keys and values bound in the `$keyval`. Note that will only contain the last value for a given key, if they were repeated.

**@keyvals = \$keyval->getPairs;**

Return the alternating keys and values bound in the `$keyval`. Note that this may contain multiple entries for a given key, if they were repeated.

**\$keyval->digestValues;**

Return a new `LaTeXML::KeyVals` object with all values digested as appropriate.

## Appendix E

# Postprocessing Module Documentation

### E.1 `LaTeXML::Post`

`LaTeXML::Post` is the driver for various postprocessing operations. It has a complicated set of options that I'll document shortly.

### E.2 `LaTeXML::Post::MathML`, `LaTeXML::Post::MathML::Presentation` `LaTeXML::Post::MathML::Content`

Post-Processing modules for converting math to MathML.

#### E.2.1 Synopsis

`LaTeXML::Post::MathML` is the abstract base class for the MathML Postprocessor; `LaTeXML::Post::MathML::Presentation` and `LaTeXML::Post::MathML::Content` convert XMath to either Presentation or Content MathML, or with that format as the principle branch for Parallel markup.

#### E.2.2 Description

The conversion is carried out primarily by a tree walk of the `XMath` expression; appropriate handlers are selected and called depending on the operators and forms encountered. Handlers can be defined on applications of operators, or on tokens; when a token is applied, it's application handler takes precedence over it's token handler

**DefMathML(\$key, \$presentation, \$content) ;**

Defines presentation and content handlers for \$key. \$key is of the form TYPE:ROLE:MEANING, where

```
TYPE      : is one either C<Token> or C<Apply> (or C<Hint> ?)
ROLE      : is a grammatical role (on XMath tokens)
MEANING   : is the meaning attribute (on XMath tokens)
```

Any of these can be ? to match any role or meaning; matches of both are preferred, then match of meaning or role, or neither.

The subroutine handlers for presentation and content are given by \$presentation and \$content, respectively. Either can be undef, in which case some other matching handler will be invoked.

For Token handlers, the arguments passed are the token node; for Apply handler, the arguments passed are the operator node and any arguments.

However, it looks like some TOKEN handlers are being defined to take \$content, %attributes being the string content of the token, and the token's attributes!

### Presentation Conversion Utilities

**\$mmlpost->pmml\_top(\$node, \$style) ;**

This is the top-level converter applied to an XMath node. It establishes a local context for font, style, size, etc. It generally does the bulk of the work for a PresentationMathML's translateNode, although the latter wraps the actual m:math element around it. (style is display or text).

**pmml(\$node), pmml\_smaller(\$node), pmml\_scriptsize(\$node)**

Converts the XMath \$node to Presentation MathML. The latter two are used when the context calls for smaller (eg. fraction parts) or scriptsize (eg sub or superscript) size or style, so that the size encoded within \$node will be properly accounted for.

**pmml\_mi(\$node, %attributes), pmml\_mn(\$node, %attributes), pmml\_mo(\$node, %attributes)**

These are Token handlers, to create m:mi, m:mn and m:mo elements, respectively. When called as a handler, they will be supplied only with an XMath node (typically an XMTok). For convenient reuse, these functions may also be called on a 'virtual' token: with \$node being a string (that would have been the text content of the XMTok), and the %attributes that would have been the token's attributes.

**pmml\_infix(\$op, @args), pmml\_script(\$op, @args), pmml\_bigop(\$op, @args)**

These are Apply handlers, for handling general infix, sub or superscript, or bigop (eg. summations) constructs. They are called with the operator token, followed by the arguments; all are XMath elements.



*E.2. LATEXML::POST::MATHML, LATEXML::POST::MATHML::PRESENTATION, LATEXML::POST::MATHML::C*

#### **pmml\_row(@items)**

This wraps an `m:mrow` around the already converted `@items` if needed; That is, if there is only a single item it is returned without the `m:mrow`.

#### **pmml\_unrow(\$pmml)**

This perverse utility takes something that has already been converted to Presentation MathML. If the argument is an `m:mrow`, it returns a list of the `mathml` elements within that row, otherwise it returns a list containing the single element `$pmml`.

#### **pmml\_parenthesize(\$item, \$open, \$close)**

This utility parenthesizes the (already converted MathML) `$item` with the string delimiters `$open` and `$close`. These are converted to an `m:mrow` with `m:mo` for the fences, unless the `usemfenced` switch is set, in which case `m:mfenced` is used.

#### **pmml\_punctuate(\$separators, @items)**

This utility creates an `m:mrow` by interjecting the punctuation between successive items in the list of already converted `@items`. If there are more than one character in `$separators` the first is used between the first pair, the next between the next pair; if the separators is exhausted, the last is repeated between remaining pairs. `$separators` defaults to (repeated) comma.

### **Content Conversion Utilities**

#### **\$mm1post-cmml.top(\$node); >**

This is the top-level converter applied to an `XMath` node. It establishes a local context for font, style, size, etc (were it needed). It generally does the bulk of the work for a `ContentMathML`'s `translateNode`, although the latter wraps the actual `m:math` element around it.

#### **cmml(\$node)**

Converts the `XMath` `$node` to Content MathML.

#### **cmml\_ci(\$token)**

Converts the `XMath` token to an `m:ci`. (This may evolve to generate a `m:csymbol`, under appropriate circumstances)

#### **cmml\_decoratedSymbol(\$item)**

Similar to `cmml_ci`, but used when an operator is itself, apparently, an application. This converts `$item` to Presentation MathML to use for the content of the `m:ci`.

#### **cmml\_not(\$arg)**

Construct the not of the argument `$arg`.

**cmml\_synth\_not (\$op, @args)**

Synthesize an operator by applying `m: not` to another operator (`$op`) applied to its `@args` (XMath elements that will be converted to Content MathML). This is useful to define a handler for, eg., `c<not-approximately-equals>` in terms of `c<m:approx>`.

**cmml\_synth\_complement (\$op, @args)**

Synthesize an operator by applying a complementary operator (`$op`) to the reverse of its `@args` (XMath elements that will be converted to Content MathML). This is useful to define a handler for, eg. `superset-of-or-equals` using `m: subset`.

**cmml\_or\_compose (\$operators, @args)**

Synthesize an operator that stands for the `or` of several other operators (eg. `c<less-than-or-similar-to-or-approximately-equals>`) by composing it of the `m: or` of applying each of `m: less` and `m: approx` to the arguments. The first operator is applied to the converted arguments, while the rest are applied to `m: share` elements referring to the previous ones.

**cmml\_share (\$node)**

Converts the XMath `$node` to Content MathML, after assuring that it has an `id`, so that it can be shared.

**cmml\_shared (\$node)**

Generates a `m: share` element referring to `$node`, which should have an `id` (such as after calling `cmml_share`).

**E.2.3 Math Processors, Generally.**

We should probably formalize the idea of a Math Processor as an abstract class, but let this description provide a starting overview. A `MathProcessor` follows the API of `LaTeXML::PostProcessors`, by handling `process`, which invokes `processNode` on all `Math` nodes; That latter inserts the result of either `translateNode` or `translateParallel`, applied to the XMath representation, into the `Math` node.

Parallel translation is done whenever additional `MathProcessors` have been specified, via the `setParallel` method; these are simply other `MathProcessors` following the same API.

## Appendix F

# LaTeXML Schema

The document type used by LaTeXML is modular in the sense that it is composed of several modules that define different sets of elements related to, eg., inline content, block content, math and high-level document structure. This allows the possibility of mixing models or extension by predefining certain parameter entities.

### F.1 Module LaTeXML

*Module* **LaTeXML-common** included.

*Module* **LaTeXML-inline** included.

*Module* **LaTeXML-block** included.

*Module* **LaTeXML-para** included.

*Module* **LaTeXML-math** included.

*Module* **LaTeXML-tabular** included.

*Module* **LaTeXML-picture** included.

*Module* **LaTeXML-structure** included.

*Module* **LaTeXML-bib** included.

*Pattern* **Inline.model** Combined model for inline content.

*Content:* (*text* | *Inline.class* | *Misc.class* | *Meta.class*)\*

*Used by:* *acknowledgements\_model*, *acronym\_model*, *anchor\_model*,  
*bib-data\_model*, *bib-date\_model*, *bib-edition\_model*,  
*bib-extract\_model*, *bib-identifier\_model*, *bib-key\_model*,  
*bib-language\_model*, *bib-links\_model*, *bib-note\_model*,  
*bib-organization\_model*, *bib-part\_model*, *bib-place\_model*,

*bib-publisher\_model, bib-review\_model, bib-status\_model, bib-subtitle\_model, bib-title\_model, bib-type\_model, bib-url\_model, bibrefphrase\_model, bibtag\_model, block\_model, cite\_model, classification\_model, constraint\_model, contact\_model, date\_model, emph\_model, givenname\_model, indexphrase\_model, indexrefs\_model, indexsee\_model, keywords\_model, lineage\_model, p\_model, personname\_model, ref\_model, subtitle\_model, surname\_model, tag\_model, text\_model, verbatim\_model, acknowledgements\_model, acronym\_model, anchor\_model, bib-data\_model, bib-date\_model, bib-edition\_model, bib-extract\_model, bib-identifier\_model, bib-key\_model, bib-language\_model, bib-links\_model, bib-note\_model, bib-organization\_model, bib-part\_model, bib-place\_model, bib-publisher\_model, bib-review\_model, bib-status\_model, bib-subtitle\_model, bib-title\_model, bib-type\_model, bib-url\_model, bibrefphrase\_model, bibtag\_model, block\_model, cite\_model, classification\_model, constraint\_model, contact\_model, date\_model, emph\_model, givenname\_model, indexphrase\_model, indexrefs\_model, indexsee\_model, keywords\_model, lineage\_model, p\_model, personname\_model, ref\_model, subtitle\_model, surname\_model, tag\_model, text\_model, verbatim\_model*

**Pattern Block.model** Combined model for physical block-level content.

**Content:** (*Block.class* | *Misc.class* | *Meta.class*)\*

**Used by:** *abstract\_model, figure\_model, float\_model, inline-block\_model, listing\_model, listingblock\_model, para\_model, quote\_model, table\_model, abstract\_model, figure\_model, float\_model, inline-block\_model, listing\_model, listingblock\_model, para\_model, quote\_model, table\_model*

**Pattern Flow.model** Combined model for general flow containing both inline and block level content.

**Content:** (*text* | *Inline.class* | *Block.class* | *Misc.class* | *Meta.class*)\*

**Used by:** *bibblock\_model, note\_model, rdf\_model, td\_model, bibblock\_model, note\_model, rdf\_model, td\_model*

**Pattern Para.model** Combined model for logical block-level context.

**Content:** (*Para.class* | *Meta.class*)\*

**Used by:** *appendix.body.class, bibliography.body.class, chapter.body.class, document.body.class, index.body.class, inline-para\_model, item\_model, paragraph.body.class, part.body.class, proof\_model, section.body.class, slide.body.class, subparagraph.body.class, subsection.body.class, subsubsection.body.class, theorem\_model, appendix.body.class,*

*bibliography.body.class, chapter.body.class, document.body.class,  
index.body.class, inline-para\_model, item\_model,  
paragraph.body.class, part.body.class, proof\_model,  
section.body.class, slide.body.class, subparagraph.body.class,  
subsection.body.class, subsubsection.body.class, theorem\_model*

*Start* == document

## F.2 Module LaTeXML-common

**Pattern Inline.class** All strictly inline elements.

*Expansion:* (text | emph | acronym | rule | anchor | ref | cite  
| bibref | Math)

*Used by:* Flow.model, Inline.model, XMText\_model, caption\_model,  
clippath\_model, g\_model, picture\_model, title\_model,  
toccaption\_model, toctitle\_model, Flow.model, Inline.model,  
XMText\_model, caption\_model, clippath\_model, g\_model,  
picture\_model, title\_model, toccaption\_model, toctitle\_model

**Pattern Block.class** All ‘physical’ block elements. A physical block is typically displayed as a block, but may not constitute a complete logical unit.

*Expansion:* (p | equation | equationgroup | quote | block  
| listingblock | itemize | enumerate | description)

*Used by:* Block.model, Flow.model, titlepage\_model, Block.model,  
Flow.model, titlepage\_model

**Pattern Misc.class** Additional miscellaneous elements that can appear in both inline and block contexts.

*Expansion:* (inline-block | verbatim | break | graphics | svg  
| inline-para | tabular | picture)

*Used by:* Block.model, Flow.model, Inline.model, XMText\_model,  
caption\_model, clippath\_model, creator\_model, g\_model,  
picture\_model, title\_model, toccaption\_model, toctitle\_model,  
Block.model, Flow.model, Inline.model, XMText\_model,  
caption\_model, clippath\_model, creator\_model, g\_model,  
picture\_model, title\_model, toccaption\_model, toctitle\_model

**Pattern Para.class** All logical block level elements. A logical block typically contains one or more physical block elements. For example, a common situation might be `p,equation,p`, where the entire sequence comprises a single sentence.

*Expansion:* (para | theorem | proof | figure | table | float | listing  
| TOC | navigation)

*Used by:* BackMatter.class, Para.model, BackMatter.class, Para.model



*bib-part\_attributes*, *bib-place\_attributes*, *bib-publisher\_attributes*,  
*bib-related\_attributes*, *bib-review\_attributes*, *bib-status\_attributes*,  
*bib-subtitle\_attributes*, *bib-title\_attributes*, *bib-type\_attributes*,  
*bib-url\_attributes*, *bibentry\_attributes*, *bibitem\_attributes*,  
*biblist\_attributes*, *bibref\_attributes*, *bibrefphrase\_attributes*,  
*block\_attributes*, *break\_attributes*, *caption\_attributes*,  
*circle\_attributes*, *cite\_attributes*, *classification\_attributes*,  
*clip\_attributes*, *clippath\_attributes*, *contact\_attributes*,  
*creator\_attributes*, *curve\_attributes*, *date\_attributes*,  
*description\_attributes*, *dots\_attributes*, *ellipse\_attributes*,  
*emph\_attributes*, *enumerate\_attributes*, *equation\_attributes*,  
*equationgroup\_attributes*, *figure\_attributes*, *float\_attributes*,  
*g\_attributes*, *graphics\_attributes*, *grid\_attributes*,  
*indexentry\_attributes*, *indexlist\_attributes*, *indexmark\_attributes*,  
*indexphrase\_attributes*, *indexrefs\_attributes*, *indexsee\_attributes*,  
*inline-block\_attributes*, *inline-para\_attributes*, *item\_attributes*,  
*itemize\_attributes*, *keywords\_attributes*, *line\_attributes*,  
*listing\_attributes*, *listingblock\_attributes*, *navigation\_attributes*,  
*note\_attributes*, *p\_attributes*, *para\_attributes*, *parabola\_attributes*,  
*path\_attributes*, *personname\_attributes*, *picture\_attributes*,  
*polygon\_attributes*, *proof\_attributes*, *quote\_attributes*, *rdf\_attributes*,  
*rect\_attributes*, *ref\_attributes*, *rule\_attributes*, *subtitle\_attributes*,  
*table\_attributes*, *tabular\_attributes*, *tag\_attributes*, *tbody\_attributes*,  
*td\_attributes*, *text\_attributes*, *tfoot\_attributes*, *thead\_attributes*,  
*theorem\_attributes*, *title\_attributes*, *toccaption\_attributes*,  
*tocentry\_attributes*, *toclist\_attributes*, *toctitle\_attributes*, *tr\_attributes*,  
*verbatim\_attributes*, *wedge\_attributes*, *ERROR\_attributes*,  
*MathBranch\_attributes*, *MathFork\_attributes*, *Math\_attributes*,  
*Sectional\_attributes*, *TOC\_attributes*, *XMAApp\_attributes*,  
*XMArg\_attributes*, *XMArray\_attributes*, *XMCell\_attributes*,  
*XMDual\_attributes*, *XMHint\_attributes*, *XMRef\_attributes*,  
*XMRow\_attributes*, *XMText\_attributes*, *XMTok\_attributes*,  
*XMWrap\_attributes*, *XMath\_attributes*, *abstract\_attributes*,  
*acknowledgements\_attributes*, *acronym\_attributes*,  
*anchor\_attributes*, *arc\_attributes*, *bezier\_attributes*,  
*bib-data\_attributes*, *bib-date\_attributes*, *bib-edition\_attributes*,  
*bib-extract\_attributes*, *bib-identifier\_attributes*, *bib-key\_attributes*,  
*bib-language\_attributes*, *bib-links\_attributes*, *bib-name\_attributes*,  
*bib-note\_attributes*, *bib-organization\_attributes*, *bib-part\_attributes*,  
*bib-place\_attributes*, *bib-publisher\_attributes*, *bib-related\_attributes*,  
*bib-review\_attributes*, *bib-status\_attributes*, *bib-subtitle\_attributes*,  
*bib-title\_attributes*, *bib-type\_attributes*, *bib-url\_attributes*,  
*bibentry\_attributes*, *bibitem\_attributes*, *biblist\_attributes*,  
*bibref\_attributes*, *bibrefphrase\_attributes*, *block\_attributes*,  
*break\_attributes*, *caption\_attributes*, *circle\_attributes*, *cite\_attributes*,  
*classification\_attributes*, *clip\_attributes*, *clippath\_attributes*,

*contact\_attributes, creator\_attributes, curve\_attributes, date\_attributes, description\_attributes, dots\_attributes, ellipse\_attributes, emph\_attributes, enumerate\_attributes, equation\_attributes, equationgroup\_attributes, figure\_attributes, float\_attributes, g\_attributes, graphics\_attributes, grid\_attributes, indexentry\_attributes, indexlist\_attributes, indexmark\_attributes, indexphrase\_attributes, indexrefs\_attributes, indexsee\_attributes, inline-block\_attributes, inline-para\_attributes, item\_attributes, itemize\_attributes, keywords\_attributes, line\_attributes, listing\_attributes, listingblock\_attributes, navigation\_attributes, note\_attributes, p\_attributes, para\_attributes, parabola\_attributes, path\_attributes, personname\_attributes, picture\_attributes, polygon\_attributes, proof\_attributes, quote\_attributes, rdf\_attributes, rect\_attributes, ref\_attributes, rule\_attributes, subtitle\_attributes, table\_attributes, tabular\_attributes, tag\_attributes, tbody\_attributes, td\_attributes, text\_attributes, tfoot\_attributes, thead\_attributes, theorem\_attributes, title\_attributes, toccaption\_attributes, tocentry\_attributes, toclist\_attributes, toctitle\_attributes, tr\_attributes, verbatim\_attributes, wedge\_attributes*

**Pattern *ID.attributes*** Attributes for elements that can be cross-referenced from inside or outside the document.

**Attribute *xml:id* = *ID***

the unique identifier of the element, usually generated automatically by the latexml.

**Used by:** *Labelled.attributes, Math\_attributes, XMAApp\_attributes, XMAArg\_attributes, XMArray\_attributes, XMDual\_attributes, XMHint\_attributes, XMRef\_attributes, XMText\_attributes, XMTok\_attributes, XMWrap\_attributes, XMath\_attributes, anchor\_attributes, bibentry\_attributes, bibitem\_attributes, block\_attributes, description\_attributes, enumerate\_attributes, graphics\_attributes, indexentry\_attributes, indexlist\_attributes, inline-block\_attributes, itemize\_attributes, p\_attributes, para\_attributes, picture\_attributes, quote\_attributes, verbatim\_attributes, Labelled.attributes, Math\_attributes, XMAApp\_attributes, XMAArg\_attributes, XMArray\_attributes, XMDual\_attributes, XMHint\_attributes, XMRef\_attributes, XMText\_attributes, XMTok\_attributes, XMWrap\_attributes, XMath\_attributes, anchor\_attributes, bibentry\_attributes, bibitem\_attributes, block\_attributes, description\_attributes, enumerate\_attributes, graphics\_attributes, indexentry\_attributes, indexlist\_attributes, inline-block\_attributes, itemize\_attributes, p\_attributes, para\_attributes, picture\_attributes, quote\_attributes, verbatim\_attributes*



**Pattern IDREF.attributes** Attributes for elements that can cross-reference other elements.

**Attribute idref** = IDREF

the identifier of the referred-to element.

*Used by:* [XMRef.attributes](#), [bibref.attributes](#), [ref.attributes](#),  
[XMRef.attributes](#), [bibref.attributes](#), [ref.attributes](#)

**Pattern Labelled.attributes** Attributes for elements that can be labelled from within LaTeX. These attributes deal with assigning a label and generating cross references.

*Attributes:* [ID.attributes](#)

**Attribute labels** = text

Records the various labels that LaTeX uses for crossreferencing. (note that `\label` can associate more than one label with an object!) It consists of space separated labels for the element. The `\label` macro provides the label prefixed by `LABEL:`; Spaces in a label are replaced by underscore. Other mechanisms (like `acro?`) might use other prefixes (but `ID:` is reserved!)

**Attribute refnum** = text

the reference number (ie. section number, equation number, etc) of the object.

**Attribute frefnum** = text

the formatted reference number of the object, typically this is the refnum with the object type prepended, such as "Chapter 2"

*Used by:* [Sectional.attributes](#), [equation.attributes](#),  
[equationgroup.attributes](#), [figure.attributes](#), [float.attributes](#),  
[item.attributes](#), [listing.attributes](#), [listingblock.attributes](#),  
[proof.attributes](#), [table.attributes](#), [theorem.attributes](#),  
[Sectional.attributes](#), [equation.attributes](#), [equationgroup.attributes](#),  
[figure.attributes](#), [float.attributes](#), [item.attributes](#), [listing.attributes](#),  
[listingblock.attributes](#), [proof.attributes](#), [table.attributes](#),  
[theorem.attributes](#)

**Pattern Fontable.attributes** Attributes for elements that contain (indirectly) text whose font can be specified.

**Attribute font** = text

Indicates the font to use. It consists of a space separated sequence of values representing the family (`serif`, `sansserif`, `math`, `typewriter`, `caligraphic`, `fraktur`, `script`, ...), `series` (`medium`, `bold`, ...), and `shape` (`upright`, `italic`, `slanted`, `smallcaps`, ...). Only the values differing from the current context are given. Each component is open-ended, for extensibility; it is thus unclear

whether unknown values specify family, series or shape. In postprocessing, these values are carried to the **class** attribute, and can thus be effected by CSS.

**Attribute fontsize** = (Huge | huge | LARGE | Large | large | normal | small | footnote | tiny | *text*)

Indicates the text size to use. The values are modeled after the more abstract L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X font size switches, rather than point-sizes. The values are open-ended for extensibility; In postprocessing, these values are carried to the **class** attribute, and can thus be effected by CSS.

*Used by:* *XM Tok\_attributes, caption\_attributes, text\_attributes, title\_attributes, verbatim\_attributes, XM Tok\_attributes, caption\_attributes, text\_attributes, title\_attributes, verbatim\_attributes*

**Pattern Colorable.attributes** Attributes for elements that can be colored.

**Attribute color** = *text*

the color to use (for foreground material); any CSS compatible color specification. In postprocessing, these values are carried to the **class** attribute, and can thus be effected by CSS.

**Attribute backgroundcolor** = *text*

the color to use for the background of the element; any CSS compatible color specification. In postprocessing, these values are carried to the **class** attribute, and can thus be effected by CSS; the background will presumably correspond to a bounding rectangle, but is determined by the CSS rendering engine.

**Attribute opacity** = *float*

the opacity of foreground material; a number between 0 and 1.

*Used by:* *XM Tok\_attributes, caption\_attributes, text\_attributes, title\_attributes, verbatim\_attributes, XM Tok\_attributes, caption\_attributes, text\_attributes, title\_attributes, verbatim\_attributes*

**Pattern Positionable.attributes** Attributes shared by low-level, generic inline and block elements that can be sized or shifted.

**Attribute width** = *Length.type*

the desired width of the box

**Attribute height** = *Length.type*

the desired height of the box

**Attribute depth** = *Length.type*

the desired depth of the box

**Attribute pad-width** = *Length.type*

extra width beyond the boxes natural size.

**Attribute pad-height** = *Length.type*

extra height beyond the boxes natural size.

**Attribute** **xoffset** = *Length.type*

horizontal shift the position of the box.

**Attribute** **yoffset** = *Length.type*

vertical shift the position of the box.

**Attribute** **align** = (left | center | right | justified)

alignment of material within the box.

**Attribute** **vattach** = (top | middle | bottom)

specifies which line of the box is aligned to the baseline of the containing object.

**Attribute** **float** = (right | left | text)

the horizontal floating placement parameter that determines where the object is displayed.

**Attribute** **framed** = (rectangle | underline | text)

the kind of frame or outline for the box.

**Attribute** **framecolor** = *text*

the color of the frame or outline for the box.

**Used by:** *block\_attributes, figure\_attributes, float\_attributes, inline-block\_attributes, inline-para\_attributes, listing\_attributes, p\_attributes, rule\_attributes, table\_attributes, text\_attributes, block\_attributes, figure\_attributes, float\_attributes, inline-block\_attributes, inline-para\_attributes, listing\_attributes, p\_attributes, rule\_attributes, table\_attributes, text\_attributes*

**Pattern** **Imageable.attributes**     Attributes for elements that may be converted to image form during postprocessing, such as math, graphics, pictures, etc. Note that these attributes are generally not filled in until postprocessing, but that they could be init

**Attribute** **imagesrc** = *anyURI*

the file, possibly generated from other data.

**Attribute** **imagewidth** = *nonNegativeInteger*

the width in pixels of imagesrc.

**Attribute** **imageheight** = *nonNegativeInteger*

the height in pixels of imagesrc. Note that, unlike T<sub>E</sub>X, this is the total height, including the depth (if any).

**Attribute** **imagedepth** = *integer*

the depth in pixels of imagesrc, being the location of the baseline of the content shown in the image. When displayed inline, an image with a positive depth should be shifted down relative to the baseline of neighboring material.

**Attribute** **description** = *text*

a description of the image

*Used by:* [Math\\_attributes](#), [graphics\\_attributes](#), [picture\\_attributes](#),  
[Math\\_attributes](#), [graphics\\_attributes](#), [picture\\_attributes](#)

### F.3 Module LaTeXML-inline

**Add to *Inline.class*** The inline module defines basic inline elements used throughout

|= ([text](#) | [emph](#) | [acronym](#) | [rule](#) | [anchor](#) | [ref](#) | [cite](#) | [bibref](#))

**Add to *Meta.class*** Additionally, it defines these meta elements. These are generally hidden, and can appear in inline and block contexts.

|= ([note](#) | [indexmark](#) | [rdf](#) | [ERROR](#))

**Element *text*** General container for styled text. Attributes cover a variety of styling and position shifting properties.

*Used by:* [Inline.class](#), [equation\\_model](#), [Inline.class](#), [equation\\_model](#)

**Pattern *text\_attributes*** Attributes for [text](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Positionable.attributes](#),  
[Fontable.attributes](#), [Colorable.attributes](#)

**Pattern *text\_model*** Content model for [text](#).

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element *emph*** Emphasized text.

*Used by:* [Inline.class](#), [Inline.class](#)

**Pattern *emph\_attributes*** Attributes for [emph](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Pattern *emph\_model*** Content model for [emph](#).

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element *acronym*** Represents an acronym.

*Used by:* [Inline.class](#), [Inline.class](#)

**Pattern *acronym\_attributes*** Attributes for [acronym](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Attribute *name*** = *text*

should be used to indicate the expansion of the acronym.

**Pattern *acronym\_model*** Content model for [acronym](#).

**Content:** *Inline.model*

**Element rule** A Rule.

**Used by:** *Inline.class, Inline.class*

**Pattern rule\_attributes** Attributes for *rule*.

**Attributes:** *Common.attributes, Positionable.attributes*

**Pattern rule\_model** Content model for *rule*.

**Content:** *empty*

**Element ref** A hyperlink reference to some other object. When converted to HTML, the content would be the content of the anchor. The destination can be specified by one of the attributes *labelref*, *idref* or *href*; Missing fields will usually be filled in during postprocessing, based on data extracted from the document(s).

**Used by:** *Inline.class, navigation\_model, tocentry\_model, Inline.class, navigation\_model, tocentry\_model*

**Pattern ref\_attributes** Attributes for *ref*.

**Attributes:** *Common.attributes, IDREF.attributes*

**Attribute labelref** = *text*

reference to a LaTeX labelled object; See the *labels* attribute of *Labelled.attributes*.

**Attribute href** = *text*

reference to an arbitrary url.

**Attribute show** = *text*

a pattern encoding how the text content should be filled in during postprocessing, if it is empty. It consists of the words *type* (standing for the object type, eg. Ch.), *refnum* and *title* mixed with arbitrary characters. The It can also be *fulltitle*, which indicates the title with prefix and type if section numbering is enabled.

**Attribute title** = *text*

gives a longer form description of the target, this would typically appear as a tooltip in HTML. Typically filled in by postprocessor.

**Pattern ref\_model** Content model for *ref*.

**Content:** *Inline.model*

**Element anchor** Inline anchor.

**Used by:** *Inline.class, Inline.class*

**Pattern *anchor\_attributes*** Attributes for [anchor](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [ID.attributes](#)

**Pattern *anchor\_model*** Content model for [anchor](#).

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element *cite*** A container for a bibliographic citation. The model is inline to allow arbitrary comments before and after the expected [bibref\(s\)](#) which are the specific citation.

*Used by:* [Inline.class](#), [Inline.class](#)

**Pattern *cite\_attributes*** Attributes for [cite](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Pattern *cite\_model*** Content model for [cite](#).

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element *bibref*** A bibliographic citation referring to a specific bibliographic item.

*Used by:* [Inline.class](#), [Inline.class](#)

**Pattern *bibref\_attributes*** Attributes for [bibref](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [IDREF.attributes](#)

**Attribute *bibrefs*** = *text*

a comma separated list of bibliographic keys. (See the *key* attribute of [bibitem](#) and [bibentry](#))

**Attribute *show*** = *text*

a pattern encoding how the text content (of an empty *bibref*) will be filled in. Consists of strings *author*, *fullauthor*, *year*, *number* and *title* (to be replaced by data from the bibliographic item) mixed with arbitrary characters.

**Attribute *separator*** = *text*

separator between formatted references

**Attribute *yyseparator*** = *text*

separator between formatted years when duplicate authors are combined.

**Pattern *bibref\_model*** Content model for [bibref](#).

*Content:* [bibrefphrase\\*](#)

**Element *bibrefphrase*** A preceding or following phrase used in composing a bibliographic reference, such as listing pages or chapter.

*Used by:* [bibref\\_model](#), [bibref\\_model](#)

**Pattern *bibrefphrase\_attributes*** Attributes for *bibrefphrase*

*Attributes:* *Common.attributes*

**Pattern *bibrefphrase\_model*** Content model for *bibrefphrase*

*Content:* *Inline.model*

**Element *note*** Metadata that covers several ‘out of band’ annotations. It’s content allows both inline and block-level content.

*Used by:* *Meta.class*, *Meta.class*

**Pattern *note\_attributes*** Attributes for *note*.

*Attributes:* *Common.attributes*

*Attribute **mark*** = *text*

indicates the desired visible marker to be linked to the note.

*Attribute **role*** = (footnote | *text*)

indicates the kind of note

**Pattern *note\_model*** Content model for *note*.

*Content:* *Flow.model*

**Element *ERROR*** error object for undefined control sequences, or whatever

*Used by:* *Meta.class*, *Meta.class*

**Pattern *ERROR\_attributes*** Attributes for *ERROR*.

*Attributes:* *Common.attributes*

**Pattern *ERROR\_model*** Content model for *ERROR*.

*Content:* *text\**

**Element *indexmark*** Metadata to record an indexing position. The content is a sequence of *indexphrase*, each representing a level in a multilevel indexing entry.

*Used by:* *Meta.class*, *Meta.class*

**Pattern *indexmark\_attributes*** Attributes for *indexmark*.

*Attributes:* *Common.attributes*

*Attribute **see\_also*** = *text*

a flattened form (like key) of another *indexmark*, used to crossreference.

*Attribute **style*** = *text*

NOTE: describe this.

**Pattern *indexmark\_model*** Content model for *indexmark*.

**Content:** *indexphrase\**, *indexsee\**

**Expansion:** (*indexphrase\**, *indexsee\**)

**Element *indexphrase*** A phrase within an *indexmark*

**Used by:** *indexentry\_model*, *indexmark\_model*, *indexentry\_model*,  
*indexmark\_model*

**Pattern *indexphrase\_attributes*** Attributes for *indexphrase*.

**Attributes:** *Common.attributes*

**Attribute *key*** = *text*

a flattened form of the phrase for generating an ID.

**Pattern *indexphrase\_model*** Content model for *indexphrase*.

**Content:** *Inline.model*

**Element *indexsee*** A see-also phrase within an *indexmark*

**Used by:** *indexmark\_model*, *indexmark\_model*

**Pattern *indexsee\_attributes*** Attributes for *indexsee*.

**Attributes:** *Common.attributes*

**Attribute *key*** = *text*

a flattened form of the phrase for generating an ID.

**Attribute *name*** = *text*

a name for the see phrase, such as "see also".

**Pattern *indexsee\_model*** Content model for *indexsee*.

**Content:** *Inline.model*

**Element *rdf*** A container for RDF annotations. (See document structure for *rdf-prefixes* attribute)

**Used by:** *Meta.class*, *Meta.class*

**Pattern *rdf\_attributes*** Attributes for *rdf*

**Attributes:** *Common.attributes*

**Attribute *property*** = *text*

indicates the RDFa property.

**Attribute *content*** = *text*

indicates the RDFa content.



**Attribute** **rel** = *text*

indicates the RDFa relation.

**Attribute** **resource** = *text*

indicates the RDFa relation.

**Attribute** **datatype** = *text*

indicates the RDFa content datatype.

**Attribute** **about** = *text*

indicates the RDFa about.

**Pattern** **rdf\_model** Content model for [rdf](#)

**Content:** [Flow.model](#)

## F.4 Module LaTeXML-block

**Add to** **Block.class** The block module defines the following ‘physical’ block elements.

= (p | [equation](#) | [equationgroup](#) | [quote](#) | [block](#) | [listingblock](#)  
| [itemize](#) | [enumerate](#) | [description](#))

**Add to** **Misc.class** Additionally, it defines these miscellaneous elements that can appear in both inline and block contexts.

= ([inline-block](#) | [verbatim](#) | [break](#) | [graphics](#) | [svg](#))

**Pattern** **EquationMeta.class** Additional Metadata that can be present in equations.

**Content:** [constraint](#)

**Used by:** [equation\\_model](#), [equationgroup\\_model](#), [equation\\_model](#),  
[equationgroup\\_model](#)

**Element** **p** A physical paragraph.

**Used by:** [Block.class](#), [equationgroup\\_model](#), [Block.class](#),  
[equationgroup\\_model](#)

**Pattern** **p\_attributes** Attributes for **p**.

**Attributes:** [Common.attributes](#), [ID.attributes](#), [Positionable.attributes](#)

**Pattern** **p\_model** Content model for **p**.

**Content:** [Inline.model](#)

**Element** **constraint** A constraint upon an equation.

*Used by:* [EquationMeta.class](#), [EquationMeta.class](#)

**Pattern constraint\_attributes** Attributes for [constraint](#).

*Attribute hidden* = *boolean*

**Pattern constraint\_model** Content model for [constraint](#).

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element equation** An Equation. The model is just Inline which includes [Math](#), the main expected ingredient. However, other things can end up in display math, too, so we use Inline. Note that tabular is here only because it's a common, if misguided, idiom; the processor will lift such elements out of math, when possible

*Used by:* [Block.class](#), [equationgroup\\_model](#), [Block.class](#), [equationgroup\\_model](#)

**Pattern equation\_attributes** Attributes for [equation](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Labelled.attributes](#)

**Pattern equation\_model** Content model for [equation](#).

*Content:* ([Math](#) | [MathFork](#) | [text](#) | [tabular](#) | [Meta.class](#) | [EquationMeta.class](#))\*

**Element equationgroup** A group of equations, perhaps aligned (Though this is nowhere recorded).

*Used by:* [Block.class](#), [equationgroup\\_model](#), [Block.class](#), [equationgroup\\_model](#)

**Pattern equationgroup\_attributes** Attributes for [equationgroup](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Labelled.attributes](#)

**Pattern equationgroup\_model** Content model for [equationgroup](#).

*Content:* ([equationgroup](#) | [equation](#) | [p](#) | [Meta.class](#) | [EquationMeta.class](#))\*

**Element MathFork** A wrapper for Math that provides alternative, but typically less semantically meaningful, formatted representations. The first child is the meaningful form, the extra children provide formatted forms, for example being table rows or cells arising from an eqnarray.

*Used by:* [equation\\_model](#), [equation\\_model](#)

**Pattern MathFork\_attributes** Attributes for [MathFork](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Pattern *MathFork\_model*** Content model for [MathFork](#).

*Content:* [Math](#), [MathBranch](#)\*

*Expansion:* ([Math](#), [MathBranch](#)\*)

**Element *MathBranch*** A container for an alternatively formatted math representation.

*Used by:* [MathFork\\_model](#), [MathFork\\_model](#)

**Pattern *MathBranch\_attributes*** Attributes for [MathBranch](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

*Attribute format* = *text*

**Pattern *MathBranch\_model*** Content model for [MathBranch](#).

*Content:* ([Math](#) | [tr](#) | [td](#))\*

**Element *quote*** A quotation.

*Used by:* [Block.class](#), [Block.class](#)

**Pattern *quote\_attributes*** Attributes for [quote](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [ID.attributes](#)

**Pattern *quote\_model*** Content model for [quote](#).

*Content:* [Block.model](#)

**Element *block*** A generic block (fallback).

*Used by:* [Block.class](#), [Block.class](#)

**Pattern *block\_attributes*** Attributes for [block](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [ID.attributes](#), [Positionable.attributes](#)

**Pattern *block\_model*** Content model for [block](#).

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element *listingblock*** An in-block Listing, without caption

*Used by:* [Block.class](#), [Block.class](#)

**Pattern *listingblock\_attributes*** Attributes for [listingblock](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Labelled.attributes](#)

**Pattern *listingblock\_model*** Content model for [listingblock](#).

*Content:* [Block.model](#)\*

**Element break** A forced line break.

*Used by:* [Misc.class](#), [Misc.class](#)

**Pattern break\_attributes** Attributes for [break](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Pattern break\_model** Content model for [break](#).

*Content:* [empty](#)

**Element inline-block** An inline block. Actually, can appear in inline or block mode, but typesets its contents as a block.

*Used by:* [Misc.class](#), [Misc.class](#)

**Pattern inline-block\_attributes** Attributes for [inline-block](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [ID.attributes](#), [Positionable.attributes](#)

**Pattern inline-block\_model** Content model for [inline-block](#).

*Content:* [Block.model](#)

**Element verbatim** Verbatim content

*Used by:* [Misc.class](#), [Misc.class](#)

**Pattern verbatim\_attributes** Attributes for [verbatim](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [ID.attributes](#), [Fontable.attributes](#), [Colorable.attributes](#)

**Pattern verbatim\_model** Content model for [verbatim](#).

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element itemize** An itemized list.

*Used by:* [Block.class](#), [Block.class](#)

**Pattern itemize\_attributes** Attributes for [itemize](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [ID.attributes](#)

**Pattern itemize\_model** Content model for [itemize](#).

*Content:* [item\\*](#)

**Element enumerate** An enumerated list.

*Used by:* [Block.class](#), [Block.class](#)

**Pattern enumerate\_attributes** Attributes for [enumerate](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [ID.attributes](#)

**Pattern `enumerate_model`** Content model for [enumerate](#).

*Content:* [item](#)\*

**Element `description`** A description list. The [items](#) within are expected to have a [tag](#) which represents the term being described in each [item](#).

*Used by:* [Block.class](#), [Block.class](#)

**Pattern `description_attributes`** Attributes for [description](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [ID.attributes](#)

**Pattern `description_model`** Content model for [description](#).

*Content:* [item](#)\*

**Element `item`** An item within a list.

*Used by:* [description\\_model](#), [enumerate\\_model](#), [itemize\\_model](#),  
[description\\_model](#), [enumerate\\_model](#), [itemize\\_model](#)

**Pattern `item_attributes`** Attributes for [item](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Labelled.attributes](#)

**Pattern `item_model`** Content model for [item](#).

*Content:* [tag](#)?, [Para.model](#)

*Expansion:* ([tag](#)?, [Para.model](#))

**Element `tag`** A tag within an item indicating the term or bullet for a given item.

*Used by:* [caption\\_model](#), [item\\_model](#), [title\\_model](#), [toccaption\\_model](#),  
[toctitle\\_model](#), [caption\\_model](#), [item\\_model](#), [title\\_model](#),  
[toccaption\\_model](#), [toctitle\\_model](#)

**Pattern `tag_attributes`** Attributes for [tag](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Attribute `open`** = *text*

specifies an open delimiters used to display the tag.

**Attribute `close`** = *text*

specifies an close delimiters used to display the tag.

**Pattern `tag_model`** Content model for [tag](#).

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element `graphics`** A graphical insertion of an external file.

*Used by:* [Misc.class](#), [Misc.class](#)

**Pattern `graphics_attributes`** Attributes for [graphics](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [ID.attributes](#), [Imageable.attributes](#)

*Attribute `graphic`* = *text*

the path to the graphics file. This is the (often minimally specified) path to a graphics file omitting the type extension. Once resolved to a specific image file, the `imagesrc` (from [Imageable.attributes](#)) is used.

*Attribute `candidates`* = *text*

a comma separated list of candidate graphics files that could be used to for graphic. A post-processor or application may choose from these, or may make its own selection or synthesis to implement the graphic for a given target.

*Attribute `options`* = *text*

an encoding of the scaling and positioning options to be used in processing the graphic.

**Pattern `graphics_model`** Content model for [graphics](#).

*Content:* *empty*

**Pattern `svg`**

*Content:*

*Module `svg11` (overridden)* included.

*Used by:* [Misc.class](#), [Misc.class](#)

## F.5 Module `LaTeXML-para`

**Add to `Para.class`** This module defines the following ‘logical’ block elements.

|= ([para](#) | [theorem](#) | [proof](#) | [figure](#) | [table](#) | [float](#) | [listing](#))

**Add to `Misc.class`** Additionally, it defines these miscellaneous elements that can appear in both inline and block contexts.

|= [inline-para](#)

**Element `para`** A Logical paragraph. It has an id, but not a label.

*Used by:* [Para.class](#), [Para.class](#)

**Pattern `para_attributes`** Attributes for [para](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [ID.attributes](#)

**Pattern `para_model`** Content model for [para](#).

**Content:** [Block.model](#)

**Element inline-para** An inline para. Actually, can appear in inline or block mode, but typesets its contents as para.

**Used by:** [Misc.class](#), [Misc.class](#)

**Pattern inline-para\_attributes** Attributes for [inline-para](#).

**Attributes:** [Common.attributes](#), [Positionable.attributes](#)

**Pattern inline-para\_model** Content model for [inline-para](#).

**Content:** [Para.model](#)

**Element theorem** A theorem or similar object. The `class` attribute can be used to distinguish different kinds of theorem.

**Used by:** [Para.class](#), [Para.class](#)

**Pattern theorem\_attributes** Attributes for [theorem](#).

**Attributes:** [Common.attributes](#), [Labelled.attributes](#)

**Pattern theorem\_model** Content model for [theorem](#).

**Content:** [title?](#), [Para.model](#)

**Expansion:** ([title?](#), [Para.model](#))

**Element proof** A proof or similar object. The `class` attribute can be used to distinguish different kinds of proof.

**Used by:** [Para.class](#), [Para.class](#)

**Pattern proof\_attributes** Attributes for [proof](#).

**Attributes:** [Common.attributes](#), [Labelled.attributes](#)

**Pattern proof\_model** Content model for [proof](#).

**Content:** [title?](#), [Para.model](#)

**Expansion:** ([title?](#), [Para.model](#))

**Pattern Caption.class** These are the additional elements representing figure and table captions. NOTE: Could title sensibly be reused here, instead? Or, should caption be used for theorem and proof?

**Content:** ([caption](#) | [toccaption](#))

**Used by:** [figure\\_model](#), [float\\_model](#), [listing\\_model](#), [table\\_model](#),  
[figure\\_model](#), [float\\_model](#), [listing\\_model](#), [table\\_model](#)

**Element figure** A figure, possibly captioned.

*Used by:* [Para.class](#), [figure\\_model](#), [Para.class](#), [figure\\_model](#)

**Pattern [figure\\_attributes](#)** Attributes for [figure](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Labelled.attributes](#),  
[Positionable.attributes](#)

*Attribute **placement*** = *text*

the vertical floating placement parameter that determines where the object is displayed.

**Pattern [figure\\_model](#)** Content model for [figure](#).

*Content:* ([figure](#) | [Block.model](#) | [Caption.class](#))\*

**Element [table](#)** A Table, possibly captioned. This is not necessarily a [tabular](#).

*Used by:* [Para.class](#), [table\\_model](#), [Para.class](#), [table\\_model](#)

**Pattern [table\\_attributes](#)** Attributes for [table](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Labelled.attributes](#),  
[Positionable.attributes](#)

*Attribute **placement*** = *text*

the vertical floating placement parameter that determines where the object is displayed.

**Pattern [table\\_model](#)** Content model for [table](#).

*Content:* ([table](#) | [Block.model](#) | [Caption.class](#))\*

**Element [float](#)** A generic float, possibly captioned, something other than a table, figure or listing

*Used by:* [Para.class](#), [float\\_model](#), [Para.class](#), [float\\_model](#)

**Pattern [float\\_attributes](#)** Attributes for [float](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Labelled.attributes](#),  
[Positionable.attributes](#)

*Attribute **placement*** = *text*

the vertical floating placement parameter that determines where the object is displayed.

**Pattern [float\\_model](#)** Content model for [float](#).

*Content:* ([float](#) | [Block.model](#) | [Caption.class](#))\*

**Element [listing](#)** A Listing, possibly captioned.

*Used by:* [Para.class](#), [Para.class](#)



**Pattern `listing_attributes`** Attributes for `listing`.

**Attributes:** `Common.attributes`, `Labelled.attributes`,  
`Positionable.attributes`

**Attribute `placement`** = `text`

the floating placement parameter that determines where the object is displayed.

**Pattern `listing_model`** Content model for `listing`.

**Content:** (`Block.model` | `Caption.class`)\*

**Element `caption`** A caption for a `table` or `figure`.

**Used by:** `Caption.class`, `Caption.class`

**Pattern `caption_attributes`** Attributes for `caption`.

**Attributes:** `Common.attributes`, `Fontable.attributes`, `Colorable.attributes`

**Pattern `caption_model`** Content model for `caption`, basically `Inline.model` with tag included (normally, but not necessarily, tag would come first).

**Content:** (`tag` | `text` | `Inline.class` | `Misc.class` | `Meta.class`)\*

**Element `tocaption`** A short form of `table` or `figure` caption, used for lists of figures or similar.

**Used by:** `Caption.class`, `Caption.class`

**Pattern `tocaption_attributes`** Attributes for `tocaption`.

**Attributes:** `Common.attributes`

**Pattern `tocaption_model`** Content model for `tocaption`.

**Content:** (`text` | `Inline.class` | `Misc.class` | `Meta.class` | `tag`)\*

## F.6 Module L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X<sub>M</sub>L-math

**Add to `Inline.class`** The math module defines L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X<sub>M</sub>L's internal representation of mathematical content, including the basic math container `Math`. This element is considered inline, as it will be contained within some other block-level element, eg. `equation` for display-math.

|= `Math`

**Pattern `Math.class`** This class defines the content of the `Math` element. Additionally, it could contain MathML or OpenMath, after postprocessing.

**Content:** `XMath`

*Used by:* [Math\\_model](#), [Math\\_model](#)

**Pattern *XMath.class*** These elements comprise the internal math representation, being the content of the [XMath](#) element.

**Content:** ([XMAp](#) | [XMTok](#) | [XMRef](#) | [XMHint](#) | [XMArg](#) | [XMWrap](#) | [XMDual](#) | [XMText](#) | [XMArray](#))

*Used by:* [XMAp\\_model](#), [XMArg\\_model](#), [XMCell\\_model](#), [XMDual\\_model](#), [XMWrap\\_model](#), [XMath\\_model](#), [XMAp\\_model](#), [XMArg\\_model](#), [XMCell\\_model](#), [XMDual\\_model](#), [XMWrap\\_model](#), [XMath\\_model](#)

**Element *Math*** Outer container for all math. This holds the internal [XMath](#) representation, as well as image data and other representations.

*Used by:* [Inline.class](#), [MathBranch\\_model](#), [MathFork\\_model](#), [equation\\_model](#), [Inline.class](#), [MathBranch\\_model](#), [MathFork\\_model](#), [equation\\_model](#)

**Pattern *Math.attributes*** Attributes for [Math](#).

**Attributes:** [Common.attributes](#), [Imageable.attributes](#), [ID.attributes](#)

**Attribute *mode*** = (display | inline)  
display or inline mode.

**Attribute *tex*** = text  
reconstruction of the  $\text{\TeX}$  that generated the math.

**Attribute *content-tex*** = text  
more semantic version of *tex*.

**Attribute *text*** = text  
a textified representation of the math.

**Pattern *Math\_model*** Content model for [Math](#).

**Content:** [Math.class](#)\*

**Pattern *XMath.attributes***

**Attribute *role*** = text  
The role that this item plays in the Grammar.

**Attribute *open*** = text  
an open delimiter to enclose the object; commonly used on an [XMAp](#) to fence a subexpression.

**Attribute *close*** = text  
an close delimiter to enclose the object;

**Attribute *enclose*** = text  
an enclose style to enclose the object with legitimate values being those of MathML's *mencl* notations;

**Attribute `argopen`** = *text*

an open delimiter to enclose the argument list, when this object is applied to arguments with `XMAp`. This attribute would typically be present on an `XMTok` being applied (`XMAp`) to arguments. The open and close would enclose the token, while `argopen` and `argclose` would enclose the arguments.

**Attribute `argclose`** = *text*

a close delimiter to enclose the argument list, when this object is applied to arguments with `XMAp`.

**Attribute `separators`** = *text*

character sequences used to separate arguments, when this object is applied to arguments with `XMAp`. The character sequences are separated by a single space; use a non-breaking space or similar if you want space separated arguments. There can be multiple character sequences for different argument positions: the first separates the first two arguments, the second separates the second and third; the last sequence is repeated if there aren't enough.

**Attribute `punctuation`** = *text*

trailing (presumably non-semantic) punctuation.

**Attribute `lspace`** = *text*

leading (presumably non-semantic) space.

**Attribute `rspace`** = *text*

trailing (presumably non-semantic) space.

**Attribute `possibleFunction`** = *text*

an annotation placed by the parser when it suspects this token may be used as a function.

**Used by:** `XMAp_attributes`, `XMArg_attributes`, `XMArray_attributes`, `XMDual_attributes`, `XMHint_attributes`, `XMRef_attributes`, `XMText_attributes`, `XMTok_attributes`, `XMWrap_attributes`, `XMAp_attributes`, `XMArg_attributes`, `XMArray_attributes`, `XMDual_attributes`, `XMHint_attributes`, `XMRef_attributes`, `XMText_attributes`, `XMTok_attributes`, `XMWrap_attributes`

**Element `XMath`** Internal representation of mathematics.

**Used by:** `Math.class`, `Math.class`

**Pattern `XMath_attributes`** Attributes for `XMath`.

**Attributes:** `Common.attributes`, `ID.attributes`

**Pattern `XMath_model`** Content model for `XMath`.

**Content:** `XMath.class*`

**Element *XMTok*** General mathematical token.

*Used by:* [XMath.class](#), [XMath.class](#)

**Pattern *XMTok\_attributes*** Attributes for [XMTok](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [XMath.attributes](#), [ID.attributes](#),  
[Fontable.attributes](#), [Colorable.attributes](#)

**Attribute *name*** = *text*

The name of the token, typically the control sequence that created it.

**Attribute *meaning*** = *text*

A more semantic name corresponding to the intended meaning, such as the OpenMath name.

**Attribute *omcd*** = *text*

The OpenMath CD for which *meaning* is a symbol.

**Attribute *scriptpos*** = *text*

An encoding of the position of this token as a sub/superscript, used to handle aligned and nested scripts, both pre and post. It is a concatenation of (pre—mid—post), which indicates the horizontal positioning of the script with relation to it's base, and a counter indicating the level. These are used to position the scripts, and to pair up aligned sub- and superscripts. NOTE: Clarify where this appears: token, base, script operator, apply?

**Attribute *thickness*** = *text*

A thickness used for drawing any lines which are part of presenting the token, such as the fraction line for the fraction operator.

**Attribute *mathstyle*** = (display | text | script | scriptscript | inline)

The math style used for displaying the application of this token when it represents some sort of fraction, variable-sized operator or stack of expressions (note that this applies to binomials or other stacks of expressions as well as fractions). Values of *display* or *text* correspond to T<sub>E</sub>X's *displaystyle* or *textstyle*, while *inline* indicates the stack should be arranged horizontally (the layout may depend on the operator).

**Pattern *XMTok\_model*** Content model for [XMTok](#).

*Content:* *text*\*

**Element *XMApp*** Generalized application of a function, operator, whatever (the first child) to arguments (the remaining children). The attributes are a subset of those for [XMTok](#).

*Used by:* [XMath.class](#), [XMath.class](#)

**Pattern *XMApp\_attributes*** Attributes for *XMApp*.

**Attributes:** *Common.attributes*, *XMath.attributes*, *ID.attributes*

**Attribute name** = *text*

The name of the token, typically the control sequence that created it.

**Attribute meaning** = *text*

A more semantic name corresponding to the intended meaning, such as the OpenMath name.

**Attribute scriptpos** = *text*

An encoding of the position of this token as a sub/superscript, used to handle aligned and nested scripts, both pre and post. (See *XMTok* for details)

**Pattern *XMApp\_model*** Content model for *XMApp*.

**Content:** *XMath.class*\*

**Element *XMDual*** Parallel markup of content (first child) and presentation (second child) of a mathematical object. Typically, the arguments are shared between the two branches: they appear in the content branch, with id's, and *XMRef* is used in the presentation branch

**Used by:** *XMath.class*, *XMath.class*

**Pattern *XMDual\_attributes*** Attributes for *XMDual*.

**Attributes:** *Common.attributes*, *XMath.attributes*, *ID.attributes*

**Pattern *XMDual\_model*** Content model for *XMDual*.

**Content:** *XMath.class*, *XMath.class*

**Expansion:** (*XMath.class*, *XMath.class*)

**Element *XMHint*** Various layout hints, usually spacing, generally ignored in parsing. The attributes are a subset of those for *XMTok*.

**Used by:** *XMath.class*, *XMath.class*

**Pattern *XMHint\_attributes*** Attributes for *XMHint*.

**Attributes:** *Common.attributes*, *XMath.attributes*, *ID.attributes*

**Attribute name** = *text*

The name of the kind of hint.

**Attribute width** = *text*

The width of the space, if any.

**Attribute height** = *text*

The height of the space, if any.

**Pattern *XMHint\_model*** Content model for *XMHint*.

**Content:** *empty*

**Element *XMText*** Text appearing within math.

**Used by:** *XMath.class*, *XMath.class*

**Pattern *XMText\_attributes*** Attributes for *XMText*.

**Attributes:** *Common.attributes*, *XMath.attributes*, *ID.attributes*

**Attribute *scriptpos*** = *text*

An encoding of the position of this token as a sub/superscript, used to handle aligned and nested scripts, both pre and post. (See *XMTok* for details)

**Pattern *XMText\_model*** Content model for *XMText*.

**Content:** (*text* | *Inline.class* | *Misc.class*)\*

**Element *XMWrap*** Wrapper for a sequence of tokens used to assert the role of the contents in its parent. This element generally disappears after parsing. The attributes are a subset of those for *XMTok*.

**Used by:** *XMath.class*, *XMath.class*

**Pattern *XMWrap\_attributes*** Attributes for *XMWrap*.

**Attributes:** *Common.attributes*, *XMath.attributes*, *ID.attributes*

**Attribute *name*** = *text*

**Attribute *meaning*** = *text*

A more semantic name corresponding to the intended meaning, such as the OpenMath name.

**Attribute *style*** = *text*

**Attribute *scriptpos*** = *text*

An encoding of the position of this token as a sub/superscript, used to handle aligned and nested scripts, both pre and post. (See *XMTok* for details)

**Pattern *XMWrap\_model*** Content model for *XMWrap*.

**Content:** *XMath.class*\*

**Element *XMArg*** Wrapper for an argument to a structured macro. It implies that its content can be parsed independently of its parent, and thus generally disappears after parsing.

**Used by:** *XMath.class*, *XMath.class*

**Pattern *XMArg\_attributes*** Attributes for *XMArg*.

**Attributes:** *Common.attributes*, *XMath.attributes*, *ID.attributes*

**Attribute *rule*** = *text*

**Attribute *scriptpos*** = *text*

An encoding of the position of this token as a sub/superscript, used to handle aligned and nested scripts, both pre and post. (See *XMTok* for details)

**Pattern *XMArg\_model*** Content model for *XMArg*.

**Content:** *XMath.class*\*

**Element *XMRef*** Structure sharing element typically used in the presentation branch of an *XMDual* to refer to the arguments present in the content branch.

**Used by:** *XMath.class*, *XMath.class*

**Pattern *XMRef\_attributes*** Attributes for *XMRef*.

**Attributes:** *Common.attributes*, *XMath.attributes*, *ID.attributes*, *IDREF.attributes*

**Pattern *XMRef\_model*** Content model for *XMRef*.

**Content:** *empty*

**Element *XMArray*** Math Array/Alignment structure.

**Used by:** *XMath.class*, *XMath.class*

**Pattern *XMArray\_attributes*** Attributes for *XMArray*.

**Attributes:** *Common.attributes*, *XMath.attributes*, *ID.attributes*

**Attribute *name*** = *text*

The name of the object, typically the control sequence that created it.

**Attribute *meaning*** = *text*

A more semantic name corresponding to the intended meaning of the object, such as the OpenMath name.

**Attribute *omcd*** = *text*

The OpenMath CD for which *meaning* is a symbol.

**Attribute *vattach*** = (top | middle | bottom)

which row's baseline aligns with the container's baseline.

**Attribute *width*** = *Length.type*

the desired width of the array.

**Pattern *XMArray\_model*** Content model for *XMArray*.

*Content:* [XMLRow](#)\*

**Element XMLRow** A row in a math alignment.

*Used by:* [XMLArray\\_model](#), [XMLArray\\_model](#)

**Pattern XMLRow\_attributes** Attributes for [XMLRow](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Pattern XMLRow\_model** Content model for [XMLRow](#).

*Content:* [XMLCell](#)\*

**Element XMLCell** A cell in a row of a math alignment.

*Used by:* [XMLRow\\_model](#), [XMLRow\\_model](#)

**Pattern XMLCell\_attributes** Attributes for [XMLCell](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Attribute colspan** = *nonNegativeInteger*

indicates how many columns this cell spans or covers.

**Attribute rowspan** = *nonNegativeInteger*

indicates how many rows this cell spans or covers.

**Attribute align** = *text*

specifies the alignment of the content.

**Attribute width** = *text*

specifies the desired width for the column.

**Attribute border** = *text*

records a sequence of t or tt, r or rr, b or bb and l or ll for borders or doubled borders on any side of the cell.

**Attribute thead** = *boolean*

whether this cell corresponds to a table head or foot.

**Pattern XMLCell\_model** Content model for [XMLCell](#).

*Content:* [XMath.class](#)\*

## F.7 Module LaTeXML-tabular

**Add to Misc.class** This module defines the basic tabular, or alignment, structure. It is roughly parallel to the HTML model.

|= [tabular](#)



**Element `tabular`** An alignment structure corresponding to tabular or various similar forms. The model is basically a copy of HTML4's table.

*Used by:* [Misc.class](#), [equation\\_model](#), [Misc.class](#), [equation\\_model](#)

**Pattern `tabular_attributes`** Attributes for `tabular`.

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Attribute `vattach`** = (top | middle | bottom)  
which row's baseline aligns with the container's baseline.

**Attribute `width`** = [Length.type](#)  
the desired width of the tabular.

**Pattern `tabular_model`** Content model for `tabular`.

*Content:* (thead | tfoot | tbody | tr)\*

**Element `thead`** A container for a set of rows that correspond to the header of the tabular.

*Used by:* [tabular\\_model](#), [tabular\\_model](#)

**Pattern `thead_attributes`** Attributes for `thead`.

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Pattern `thead_model`** Content model for `thead`.

*Content:* tr\*

**Element `tfoot`** A container for a set of rows that correspond to the footer of the tabular.

*Used by:* [tabular\\_model](#), [tabular\\_model](#)

**Pattern `tfoot_attributes`** Attributes for `tfoot`.

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Pattern `tfoot_model`** Content model for `tfoot`.

*Content:* tr\*

**Element `tbody`** A container for a set of rows corresponding to the body of the tabular.

*Used by:* [tabular\\_model](#), [tabular\\_model](#)

**Pattern `tbody_attributes`** Attributes for `tbody`.

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Pattern `tbody_model`** Content model for `tbody`.

**Content:** [tr](#)\*

**Element [tr](#)** A row of a tabular.

**Used by:** [MathBranch\\_model](#), [tabular\\_model](#), [tbody\\_model](#), [tfoot\\_model](#),  
[thead\\_model](#), [MathBranch\\_model](#), [tabular\\_model](#), [tbody\\_model](#),  
[tfoot\\_model](#), [thead\\_model](#)

**Pattern [tr\\_attributes](#)** Attributes for [tr](#).

**Attributes:** [Common.attributes](#)

**Pattern [tr\\_model](#)** Content model for [tr](#).

**Content:** [td](#)\*

**Element [td](#)** A cell in a row of a tabular.

**Used by:** [MathBranch\\_model](#), [tr\\_model](#), [MathBranch\\_model](#), [tr\\_model](#)

**Pattern [td\\_attributes](#)** Attributes for [td](#).

**Attributes:** [Common.attributes](#)

**Attribute [colspan](#)** = *nonNegativeInteger*

indicates how many columns this cell spans or covers.

**Attribute [rowspan](#)** = *nonNegativeInteger*

indicates how many rows this cell spans or covers.

**Attribute [align](#)** = *text*

specifies the alignment of the content.

**Attribute [width](#)** = [Length.type](#)

specifies the desired width for the column.

**Attribute [border](#)** = *text*

records a sequence of t or tt, r or rr, b or bb and l or ll for borders or  
doubled borders on any side of the cell.

**Attribute [thead](#)** = *boolean*

whether this cell corresponds to a table head or foot.

**Pattern [td\\_model](#)** Content model for [td](#).

**Content:** [Flow.model](#)

## F.8 Module LaTeXML-picture

**Add to *Misc.class*** This module defines a picture environment, roughly a subset of SVG. NOTE: Consider whether it is sensible to drop this and incorporate SVG itself.

|= [picture](#)

### **Pattern *Picture.class***

**Content:** ([g](#) | [rect](#) | [line](#) | [circle](#) | [path](#) | [arc](#) | [wedge](#) | [ellipse](#) | [polygon](#) | [bezier](#) | [parabola](#) | [curve](#) | [dots](#) | [grid](#) | [clip](#))

**Used by:** [clippath\\_model](#), [g\\_model](#), [picture\\_model](#), [clippath\\_model](#), [g\\_model](#), [picture\\_model](#)

**Pattern *Picture.attributes*** These attributes correspond roughly to SVG, but need documentation.

**Attribute *x*** = text

**Attribute *y*** = text

**Attribute *r*** = text

**Attribute *rx*** = text

**Attribute *ry*** = text

**Attribute *width*** = text

**Attribute *height*** = text

**Attribute *fill*** = text

**Attribute *stroke*** = text

**Attribute *stroke-width*** = text

**Attribute *stroke-dasharray*** = text

**Attribute *transform*** = text

**Attribute *terminators*** = text

**Attribute *arrowlength*** = text

**Attribute *points*** = text

**Attribute *showpoints*** = text

**Attribute *displayedpoints*** = text

**Attribute *arc*** = text

**Attribute *angle1*** = text

**Attribute *angle2*** = text

**Attribute *arcsepA*** = text

**Attribute *arcsepB*** = text

**Attribute** **curvature** = *text*

**Used by:** *arc\_attributes, bezier\_attributes, circle\_attributes, clip\_attributes, clippath\_attributes, curve\_attributes, dots\_attributes, ellipse\_attributes, g\_attributes, grid\_attributes, line\_attributes, parabola\_attributes, path\_attributes, picture\_attributes, polygon\_attributes, rect\_attributes, wedge\_attributes, arc\_attributes, bezier\_attributes, circle\_attributes, clip\_attributes, clippath\_attributes, curve\_attributes, dots\_attributes, ellipse\_attributes, g\_attributes, grid\_attributes, line\_attributes, parabola\_attributes, path\_attributes, picture\_attributes, polygon\_attributes, rect\_attributes, wedge\_attributes*

**Pattern** **PictureGroup.attributes** These attributes correspond roughly to SVG, but need documentation.

**Attribute** **pos** = *text*

**Attribute** **framed** = *boolean*

**Attribute** **frametype** = (*rect | circle | oval*)

**Attribute** **fillframe** = *boolean*

**Attribute** **boxsep** = *text*

**Attribute** **shadowbox** = *boolean*

**Attribute** **doubleline** = *boolean*

**Used by:** *g\_attributes, g\_attributes*

**Element** **picture** A picture environment.

**Used by:** *Misc.class, Misc.class*

**Pattern** **picture.attributes** Attributes for *picture*.

**Attributes:** *Common.attributes, ID.attributes, Picture.attributes, Imageable.attributes*

**Attribute** **clip** = *boolean*

**Attribute** **baseline** = *text*

**Attribute** **unitlength** = *text*

**Attribute** **xunitlength** = *text*

**Attribute** **yunitlength** = *text*

**Attribute** **tex** = *text*

**Attribute** **content-tex** = *text*

**Pattern** **picture.model** Content model for *picture*.

**Content:** (*Picture.class | Inline.class | Misc.class | Meta.class*)\*

**Element g** A graphical grouping; the content is inherits by the transformations, positioning and other properties.

*Used by:* [Picture.class](#), [Picture.class](#)

**Pattern g\_attributes** Attributes for [g](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Picture.attributes](#), [PictureGroup.attributes](#)

**Pattern g\_model** Content model for [g](#).

*Content:* ([Picture.class](#) | [Inline.class](#) | [Misc.class](#) | [Meta.class](#))\*

**Element rect** A rectangle within a [picture](#).

*Used by:* [Picture.class](#), [Picture.class](#)

**Pattern rect\_attributes** Attributes for [rect](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Picture.attributes](#)

**Pattern rect\_model** Content model for [rect](#).

*Content:* *empty*

**Element line** A line within a [picture](#).

*Used by:* [Picture.class](#), [Picture.class](#)

**Pattern line\_attributes** Attributes for [line](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Picture.attributes](#)

**Pattern line\_model** Content model for [line](#).

*Content:* *empty*

**Element polygon** A polygon within a [picture](#).

*Used by:* [Picture.class](#), [Picture.class](#)

**Pattern polygon\_attributes** Attributes for [polygon](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Picture.attributes](#)

**Pattern polygon\_model** Content model for [polygon](#).

*Content:* *empty*

**Element wedge** A wedge within a [picture](#).

*Used by:* [Picture.class](#), [Picture.class](#)

**Pattern wedge\_attributes** Attributes for [wedge](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Picture.attributes](#)

**Pattern *wedge\_model*** Content model for [wedge](#).

*Content:* *empty*

**Element *arc*** An arc within a [picture](#).

*Used by:* [Picture.class](#), [Picture.class](#)

**Pattern *arc\_attributes*** Attributes for [arc](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Picture.attributes](#)

**Pattern *arc\_model*** Content model for [arc](#).

*Content:* *empty*

**Element *circle*** A circle within a [picture](#).

*Used by:* [Picture.class](#), [Picture.class](#)

**Pattern *circle\_attributes*** Attributes for [circle](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Picture.attributes](#)

**Pattern *circle\_model*** Content model for [circle](#).

*Content:* *empty*

**Element *ellipse*** An ellipse within a [picture](#).

*Used by:* [Picture.class](#), [Picture.class](#)

**Pattern *ellipse\_attributes*** Attributes for [ellipse](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Picture.attributes](#)

**Pattern *ellipse\_model*** Content model for [ellipse](#).

*Content:* *empty*

**Element *path*** A path within a [picture](#).

*Used by:* [Picture.class](#), [Picture.class](#)

**Pattern *path\_attributes*** Attributes for [path](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Picture.attributes](#)

**Pattern *path\_model*** Content model for [path](#).

*Content:* *empty*

**Element *bezier*** A bezier curve within a [picture](#).

*Used by:* [Picture.class](#), [Picture.class](#)

**Pattern bezier\_attributes** Attributes for [bezier](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Picture.attributes](#)

**Pattern bezier\_model** Content model for [bezier](#).

*Content:* *empty*

**Element curve** A curve within a [picture](#).

*Used by:* [Picture.class](#), [Picture.class](#)

**Pattern curve\_attributes** Attributes for [curve](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Picture.attributes](#)

**Pattern curve\_model** Content model for [curve](#).

*Content:* *empty*

**Element parabola** A parabola curve within a [picture](#).

*Used by:* [Picture.class](#), [Picture.class](#)

**Pattern parabola\_attributes** Attributes for [parabola](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Picture.attributes](#)

**Pattern parabola\_model** Content model for [parabola](#).

*Content:* *empty*

**Element dots** A sequence of dots (?) within a [picture](#).

*Used by:* [Picture.class](#), [Picture.class](#)

**Pattern dots\_attributes** Attributes for [dots](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Picture.attributes](#)

**Pattern dots\_model** Content model for [dots](#).

*Content:* *empty*

**Element grid** A grid within a [picture](#).

*Used by:* [Picture.class](#), [Picture.class](#)

**Pattern grid\_attributes** Attributes for [grid](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Picture.attributes](#)

**Pattern grid\_model** Content model for [grid](#).

**Content:** *empty*

**Element clip** Establishes a clipping region within a [picture](#).

**Used by:** [Picture.class](#), [Picture.class](#)

**Pattern clip\_attributes** Attributes for [clip](#).

**Attributes:** [Common.attributes](#), [Picture.attributes](#)

**Pattern clip\_model** Content model for [clip](#).

**Content:** [clippath](#)\*

**Element clippath** Establishes a clipping region within a [picture](#).

**Used by:** [clip\\_model](#), [clip\\_model](#)

**Pattern clippath\_attributes** Attributes for [clippath](#).

**Attributes:** [Common.attributes](#), [Picture.attributes](#)

**Pattern clippath\_model** Content model for [clippath](#).

**Content:** ([Picture.class](#) | [Inline.class](#) | [Misc.class](#) | [Meta.class](#))\*

## F.9 Module LaTeXML-structure

**Element document** The document root.

**Pattern document.body.class** The content allowable as the main body of the document.

**Content:** ([Para.model](#) | [paragraph](#) | [subsubsection](#) | [subsection](#) | [section](#) | [chapter](#) | [part](#) | [slide](#))

**Used by:** [document\\_model](#), [document\\_model](#)

**Pattern document\_attributes** Attributes for [document](#).

**Attributes:** [Sectional.attributes](#)

**Pattern document\_model** Content model for [document](#).

**Content:** ([FrontMatter.class](#) | [SectionalFrontMatter.class](#) | [Meta.class](#) | [titlepage](#))\*, [document.body.class](#)\*, [BackMatter.class](#)\*

**Expansion:** (([FrontMatter.class](#) | [SectionalFrontMatter.class](#) | [Meta.class](#) | [titlepage](#))\*, [document.body.class](#)\*, [BackMatter.class](#)\*)

**Element part** A part within a document.



*Used by:* [document.body.class](#), [document.body.class](#)

**Pattern [part.body.class](#)** The content allowable as the main body of a part.

*Content:* ([Para.model](#) | [chapter](#) | [slide](#))

*Used by:* [part.model](#), [part.model](#)

**Pattern [part\\_attributes](#)** Attributes for [part](#).

*Attributes:* [Sectional.attributes](#)

**Pattern [part\\_model](#)** Content model for [part](#).

*Content:* [SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#), [part.body.class\\*](#)

*Expansion:* ([SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#), [part.body.class\\*](#))

**Element [chapter](#)** A Chapter within a document.

*Used by:* [document.body.class](#), [part.body.class](#), [document.body.class](#),  
[part.body.class](#)

**Pattern [chapter.body.class](#)** The content allowable as the main body of a chapter.

*Content:* ([Para.model](#) | [subparagraph](#) | [paragraph](#) | [subsubsection](#)  
| [subsection](#) | [section](#) | [slide](#))

*Used by:* [chapter\\_model](#), [chapter\\_model](#)

**Pattern [chapter\\_attributes](#)** Attributes for [chapter](#).

*Attributes:* [Sectional.attributes](#)

**Pattern [chapter\\_model](#)** Content model for [chapter](#).

*Content:* [SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#), [chapter.body.class\\*](#)

*Expansion:* ([SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#), [chapter.body.class\\*](#))

**Element [section](#)** A Section within a document.

*Used by:* [appendix.body.class](#), [chapter.body.class](#), [document.body.class](#),  
[appendix.body.class](#), [chapter.body.class](#), [document.body.class](#)

**Pattern [section.body.class](#)** The content allowable as the main body of a section.

*Content:* ([Para.model](#) | [subparagraph](#) | [paragraph](#) | [subsubsection](#)  
| [subsection](#) | [slide](#))

*Used by:* [section\\_model](#), [section\\_model](#)

**Pattern [section\\_attributes](#)** Attributes for [section](#).

*Attributes:* [Sectional.attributes](#)

**Pattern [section\\_model](#)** Content model for [section](#).

*Content:* [SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#), [section.body.class\\*](#)

*Expansion:* ([SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#), [section.body.class\\*](#))

**Element [subsection](#)** A Subsection within a document.

*Used by:* [appendix.body.class](#), [chapter.body.class](#), [document.body.class](#),  
[section.body.class](#), [appendix.body.class](#), [chapter.body.class](#),  
[document.body.class](#), [section.body.class](#)

**Pattern [subsection.body.class](#)** The content allowable as the main body of a subsection.

*Content:* ([Para.model](#) | [subparagraph](#) | [paragraph](#) | [subsubsection](#)  
| [slide](#))

*Used by:* [subsection\\_model](#), [subsection\\_model](#)

**Pattern [subsection.attributes](#)** Attributes for [subsection](#).

*Attributes:* [Sectional.attributes](#)

**Pattern [subsection\\_model](#)** Content model for [subsection](#).

*Content:* [SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#), [subsection.body.class\\*](#)

*Expansion:* ([SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#), [subsection.body.class\\*](#))

**Element [subsubsection](#)** A Subsubsection within a document.

*Used by:* [appendix.body.class](#), [chapter.body.class](#), [document.body.class](#),  
[section.body.class](#), [subsection.body.class](#), [appendix.body.class](#),  
[chapter.body.class](#), [document.body.class](#), [section.body.class](#),  
[subsection.body.class](#)

**Pattern [subsubsection.body.class](#)** The content allowable as the main body of a subsubsection.

*Content:* ([Para.model](#) | [subparagraph](#) | [paragraph](#) | [slide](#))

*Used by:* [subsubsection\\_model](#), [subsubsection\\_model](#)

**Pattern [subsubsection.attributes](#)** Attributes for [subsubsection](#).

*Attributes:* [Sectional.attributes](#)

**Pattern [subsubsection\\_model](#)** Content model for [subsubsection](#).

*Content:* [SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#), [subsubsection.body.class\\*](#)

*Expansion:* ([SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#), [subsubsection.body.class\\*](#))

**Element paragraph** A Paragraph within a document. This corresponds to a ‘formal’ marked, possibly labelled LaTeX Paragraph, in distinction from an unlabelled logical paragraph.

*Used by:* [appendix.body.class](#), [chapter.body.class](#), [document.body.class](#), [section.body.class](#), [subsection.body.class](#), [subsubsection.body.class](#), [appendix.body.class](#), [chapter.body.class](#), [document.body.class](#), [section.body.class](#), [subsection.body.class](#), [subsubsection.body.class](#)

**Pattern paragraph.body.class** The content allowable as the main body of a paragraph.

*Content:* ([Para.model](#) | [subparagraph](#) | [slide](#))

*Used by:* [paragraph\\_model](#), [paragraph\\_model](#)

**Pattern paragraph\_attributes** Attributes for [paragraph](#).

*Attributes:* [Sectional.attributes](#)

**Pattern paragraph\_model** Content model for [paragraph](#).

*Content:* [SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#), [paragraph.body.class\\*](#)

*Expansion:* ([SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#), [paragraph.body.class\\*](#))

**Element subparagraph** A Subparagraph within a document.

*Used by:* [appendix.body.class](#), [chapter.body.class](#), [paragraph.body.class](#), [section.body.class](#), [subsection.body.class](#), [subsubsection.body.class](#), [appendix.body.class](#), [chapter.body.class](#), [paragraph.body.class](#), [section.body.class](#), [subsection.body.class](#), [subsubsection.body.class](#)

**Pattern subparagraph.body.class** The content allowable as the main body of a subparagraph.

*Content:* ([Para.model](#) | [slide](#))

*Used by:* [subparagraph\\_model](#), [subparagraph\\_model](#)

**Pattern subparagraph\_attributes** Attributes for [subparagraph](#).

*Attributes:* [Sectional.attributes](#)

**Pattern subparagraph\_model** Content model for [subparagraph](#).

*Content:* [SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#), [subparagraph.body.class\\*](#)

*Expansion:* ([SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#), [subparagraph.body.class\\*](#))

**Element slide** A Subparagraph within a document.

*Used by:* [appendix.body.class](#), [chapter.body.class](#), [document.body.class](#), [paragraph.body.class](#), [part.body.class](#), [section.body.class](#), [subparagraph.body.class](#), [subsection.body.class](#), [subsubsection.body.class](#), [appendix.body.class](#), [chapter.body.class](#), [document.body.class](#), [paragraph.body.class](#), [part.body.class](#), [section.body.class](#), [subparagraph.body.class](#), [subsection.body.class](#), [subsubsection.body.class](#)

**Pattern [slide.body.class](#)** The content allowable as the main body of a slide.

*Content:* [Para.model](#)

*Used by:* [slide\\_model](#), [slide\\_model](#)

**Pattern [slide.attributes](#)** Attributes for [slide](#).

*Attributes:* [Sectional.attributes](#)

**Pattern [slide\\_model](#)** Content model for [slide](#).

*Content:* [SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#), [slide.body.class\\*](#)

*Expansion:* ([SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#), [slide.body.class\\*](#))

**Element [appendix](#)** An Appendix within a document.

*Used by:* [BackMatter.class](#), [BackMatter.class](#)

**Pattern [appendix.body.class](#)** The content allowable as the main body of a chapter.

*Content:* ([Para.model](#) | [subparagraph](#) | [paragraph](#) | [subsubsection](#) | [subsection](#) | [section](#) | [slide](#))

*Used by:* [appendix\\_model](#), [appendix\\_model](#)

**Pattern [appendix.attributes](#)** Attributes for [appendix](#).

*Attributes:* [Sectional.attributes](#)

**Pattern [appendix\\_model](#)** Content model for [appendix](#).

*Content:* [SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#), [appendix.body.class\\*](#)

*Expansion:* ([SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#), [appendix.body.class\\*](#))

**Element [bibliography](#)** A Bibliography within a document.

*Used by:* [BackMatter.class](#), [BackMatter.class](#)

**Pattern [bibliography.body.class](#)** The content allowable as the main body of a chapter.

*Content:* ([Para.model](#) | [biblist](#))

*Used by:* [bibliography\\_model](#), [bibliography\\_model](#)

**Pattern [bibliography\\_attributes](#)** Attributes for [bibliography](#).

*Attributes:* [Sectional.attributes](#)

*Attribute **files** = text*

the list of bib files used to create the bibliography.

**Pattern [bibliography\\_model](#)** Content model for [bibliography](#).

*Content:* [FrontMatter.class\\*](#), [SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#),  
[bibliography.body.class\\*](#)

*Expansion:* ([FrontMatter.class\\*](#), [SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#),  
[bibliography.body.class\\*](#))

**Element [index](#)** An Index within a document.

*Used by:* [BackMatter.class](#), [BackMatter.class](#)

**Pattern [index.body.class](#)** The content allowable as the main body of a chapter.

*Content:* ([Para.model](#) | [indexlist](#))

*Used by:* [index\\_model](#), [index\\_model](#)

**Pattern [index\\_attributes](#)** Attributes for [index](#).

*Attributes:* [Sectional.attributes](#)

**Pattern [index\\_model](#)** Content model for [index](#).

*Content:* [SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#), [index.body.class\\*](#)

*Expansion:* ([SectionalFrontMatter.class\\*](#), [index.body.class\\*](#))

**Element [indexlist](#)** A heirarchical index generated. Typically generated during postprocessing from the collection of [indexmark](#) in the document (or document collection).

*Used by:* [index.body.class](#), [indexentry\\_model](#), [index.body.class](#),  
[indexentry\\_model](#)

**Pattern [indexlist\\_attributes](#)** Attributes for [indexlist](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [ID.attributes](#)

**Pattern [indexlist\\_model](#)** Content model for [indexlist](#).

*Content:* [indexentry\\*](#)

**Element [indexentry](#)** An entry in an [indexlist](#) consisting of a phrase, references to points in the document where the phrase was found, and possibly a nested [indexlist](#) represented index levels below this one.

*Used by:* [indexlist\\_model](#), [indexlist\\_model](#)

**Pattern [indexentry\\_attributes](#)** Attributes for [indexentry](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [ID.attributes](#)

**Pattern [indexentry\\_model](#)** Content model for [indexentry](#).

*Content:* [indexphrase](#), [indexrefs?](#), [indexlist?](#)

*Expansion:* ([indexphrase](#), [indexrefs?](#), [indexlist?](#))

**Element [indexrefs](#)** A container for the references ([ref](#)) to where an [indexphrase](#) was encountered in the document. The model is Inline to allow arbitrary text, in addition to the expected [ref](#)'s.

*Used by:* [indexentry\\_model](#), [indexentry\\_model](#)

**Pattern [indexrefs\\_attributes](#)** Attributes for [indexrefs](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Pattern [indexrefs\\_model](#)** Content model for [indexrefs](#).

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element [title](#)** The title of a document, section or similar document structure container.

*Used by:* [SectionalFrontMatter.class](#), [proof\\_model](#), [theorem\\_model](#),  
[SectionalFrontMatter.class](#), [proof\\_model](#), [theorem\\_model](#)

**Pattern [title\\_attributes](#)** Attributes for [title](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [Fontable.attributes](#), [Colorable.attributes](#)

**Pattern [title\\_model](#)** Content model for [title](#), basically [Inline.model](#) with tag included (normally, but not necessarily, tag would come first).

*Content:* ([tag](#) | [text](#) | [Inline.class](#) | [Misc.class](#) | [Meta.class](#))\*

**Element [toctitle](#)** The short form of a title, for use in tables of contents or similar.

*Used by:* [SectionalFrontMatter.class](#), [SectionalFrontMatter.class](#)

**Pattern [toctitle\\_attributes](#)** Attributes for [toctitle](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Pattern [toctitle\\_model](#)** Content model for [toctitle](#).

*Content:* ([text](#) | [Inline.class](#) | [Misc.class](#) | [Meta.class](#) | [tag](#))\*

**Element [subtitle](#)** A subtitle, or secondary title.

*Used by:* [FrontMatter.class](#), [FrontMatter.class](#)

**Pattern subtitle\_attributes** Attributes for [subtitle](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Pattern subtitle\_model** Content model for [subtitle](#).

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element creator** Generalized document creator.

*Used by:* [SectionalFrontMatter.class](#), [SectionalFrontMatter.class](#)

**Pattern Person.class** The content allowed in authors, editors, etc.

*Content:* ([personname](#) | [contact](#))

*Used by:* [creator\\_model](#), [creator\\_model](#)

**Pattern creator\_attributes** Attributes for [creator](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [FrontMatter.attributes](#)

*Attribute role* =(author | editor | translator | contributor  
| translator | text)

indicates the role of the person in creating the document. Commonly useful values are specified, but is open-ended to support extension.

**Pattern creator\_model** Content model for [creator](#).

*Content:* ([Person.class](#) | [Misc.class](#))\*

**Element personname** A person's name.

*Used by:* [Person.class](#), [Person.class](#)

**Pattern personname\_attributes** Attributes for [personname](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Pattern personname\_model** Content model for [personname](#).

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element contact** Generalized contact information for a document creator. Note that this element can be repeated to give different types of contact information (using role) for the same creator.

*Used by:* [Person.class](#), [Person.class](#)

**Pattern contact\_attributes** Attributes for [contact](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [FrontMatter.attributes](#)

**Attribute role** = (affiliation | address | current\_address  
| email | url | thanks | dedicatory | *text*)  
indicates the type of contact information contained. Commonly useful  
values are specified, but is open-ended to support extension.

**Pattern contact\_model** Content model for [contact](#).

**Content:** [Inline.model](#)

**Element date** Generalized document date. Note that this element can be repeated  
to give the dates of different events (using **role**) for the same document.

**Used by:** [FrontMatter.class](#), [FrontMatter.class](#)

**Pattern date\_attributes** Attributes for [date](#).

**Attributes:** [Common.attributes](#), [FrontMatter.attributes](#)

**Attribute role** = (creation | conversion | posted | received  
| revised | accepted | *text*)  
indicates the relevance of the date to the document. Commonly useful  
values are specified, but is open-ended to support extension.

**Pattern date\_model** Content model for [date](#).

**Content:** [Inline.model](#)

**Element abstract** A document abstract.

**Used by:** [FrontMatter.class](#), [FrontMatter.class](#)

**Pattern abstract\_attributes** Attributes for [abstract](#).

**Attributes:** [Common.attributes](#), [FrontMatter.attributes](#)

**Pattern abstract\_model** Content model for [abstract](#).

**Content:** [Block.model](#)

**Element acknowledgements** Acknowledgements for the document.

**Used by:** [BackMatter.class](#), [FrontMatter.class](#), [BackMatter.class](#),  
[FrontMatter.class](#)

**Pattern acknowledgements\_attributes** Attributes for [acknowledgements](#).

**Attributes:** [Common.attributes](#), [FrontMatter.attributes](#)

**Pattern acknowledgements\_model** Content model for [acknowledgements](#).

**Content:** [Inline.model](#)

**Element keywords** Keywords for the document. The content is freeform.



*Used by:* [FrontMatter.class](#), [FrontMatter.class](#)

**Pattern keywords.attributes** Attributes for [keywords](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [FrontMatter.attributes](#)

**Pattern keywords.model** Content model for [keywords](#).

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element classification** A classification of the document.

*Used by:* [FrontMatter.class](#), [FrontMatter.class](#)

**Pattern classification.attributes** Attributes for [classification](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [FrontMatter.attributes](#)

**Attribute scheme** = *text*

indicates what classification scheme was used.

**Pattern classification.model** Content model for [classification](#).

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element titlepage** block of random stuff marked as a titlepage

*Used by:* [document.model](#), [document.model](#)

**Pattern titlepage.attributes** Attributes for [titlepage](#).

*Attributes:* [Sectional.attributes](#)

**Pattern titlepage.model** Content model for [titlepage](#).

*Content:* ([FrontMatter.class](#) | [SectionalFrontMatter.class](#)  
| [Block.class](#))\*

**Element TOC** (Generalized) Table Of Contents, represents table of contents as well as list of figures, tables, and other such things. This will generally be placed by a `\tableofcontents` command and filled in by postprocessing.

*Used by:* [Para.class](#), [navigation.model](#), [Para.class](#), [navigation.model](#)

**Pattern TOC.attributes** Attributes for [TOC](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#), [FrontMatter.attributes](#)

**Attribute role** = (contents | figures | tables | text)

indicates the kind of list

**Attribute select** = *text*

indicates what kind of document elements to list, in the form of one or more tags such as `ltx:chapter` separated by | (suggestive of an xpath expression).

**Attribute format** = (normal | short | veryshort | text)

indicates how to format the listing

**Pattern TOC\_model** Content model for TOC.

**Content:** toclist?

**Element toclist** The actual table of contents list, filled in.

**Used by:** TOC\_model, tocentry\_model, TOC\_model, tocentry\_model

**Pattern toclist\_attributes** Attributes for toclist.

**Attributes:** Common.attributes

**Pattern toclist\_model** Content model for toclist.

**Content:** tocentry\*

**Element tocentry** An entry in a toclist.

**Used by:** toclist\_model, toclist\_model

**Pattern tocentry\_attributes** Attributes for tocentry.

**Attributes:** Common.attributes

**Pattern tocentry\_model** Content model for tocentry.

**Content:** (ref | toclist)\*

**Element navigation** Records navigation cross-referencing information, links from the current page or document to related ones, up, down, previous, next, and so forth; these relations are recorded in the class attribute of the ref.

*Really?; overload the class attribute!? This should be role! Could also use a navigation name text or something?*

**Used by:** Para.class, Para.class

**Pattern navigation\_attributes** Attributes for navigation.

**Attributes:** Common.attributes

**Pattern navigation\_model** Content model for navigation.

**Content:** (ref | TOC)\*

**Pattern Sectional.attributes** Attributes shared by all sectional elements

**Attributes:** Common.attributes, Labelled.attributes

**Attribute rdf-prefixes** = text

Stores RDFa prefixes as space separated pairs, with the pairs being prefix and url separated by a colon; this should only appear at the root element.

*Used by:* [appendix\\_attributes](#), [bibliography\\_attributes](#), [chapter\\_attributes](#), [document\\_attributes](#), [index\\_attributes](#), [paragraph\\_attributes](#), [part\\_attributes](#), [section\\_attributes](#), [slide\\_attributes](#), [subparagraph\\_attributes](#), [subsection\\_attributes](#), [subsubsection\\_attributes](#), [titlepage\\_attributes](#), [appendix\\_attributes](#), [bibliography\\_attributes](#), [chapter\\_attributes](#), [document\\_attributes](#), [index\\_attributes](#), [paragraph\\_attributes](#), [part\\_attributes](#), [section\\_attributes](#), [slide\\_attributes](#), [subparagraph\\_attributes](#), [subsection\\_attributes](#), [subsubsection\\_attributes](#), [titlepage\\_attributes](#)

**Pattern `FrontMatter.attributes`** Attributes for other elements that can be used in frontmatter.

**Attribute `name`** = *text*

Records the name of the type of object this is to be used when composing the presentation. The value of this attribute is often set by language localization packages.

*Used by:* [TOC\\_attributes](#), [abstract\\_attributes](#), [acknowledgements\\_attributes](#), [classification\\_attributes](#), [contact\\_attributes](#), [creator\\_attributes](#), [date\\_attributes](#), [keywords\\_attributes](#), [TOC\\_attributes](#), [abstract\\_attributes](#), [acknowledgements\\_attributes](#), [classification\\_attributes](#), [contact\\_attributes](#), [creator\\_attributes](#), [date\\_attributes](#), [keywords\\_attributes](#)

**Pattern `SectionalFrontMatter.class`** The content allowed for the front matter of each sectional unit, and the document.

**Content:** ([title](#) | [toctitle](#) | [creator](#))

*Used by:* [appendix\\_model](#), [bibliography\\_model](#), [chapter\\_model](#), [document\\_model](#), [index\\_model](#), [paragraph\\_model](#), [part\\_model](#), [section\\_model](#), [slide\\_model](#), [subparagraph\\_model](#), [subsection\\_model](#), [subsubsection\\_model](#), [titlepage\\_model](#), [appendix\\_model](#), [bibliography\\_model](#), [chapter\\_model](#), [document\\_model](#), [index\\_model](#), [paragraph\\_model](#), [part\\_model](#), [section\\_model](#), [slide\\_model](#), [subparagraph\\_model](#), [subsection\\_model](#), [subsubsection\\_model](#), [titlepage\\_model](#)

**Pattern `FrontMatter.class`** The content allowed (in addition to [SectionalFrontMatter.class](#)) for the front matter of a document.

**Content:** ([subtitle](#) | [date](#) | [abstract](#) | [acknowledgements](#) | [keywords](#) | [classification](#))

*Used by:* [bibliography\\_model](#), [document\\_model](#), [titlepage\\_model](#), [bibliography\\_model](#), [document\\_model](#), [titlepage\\_model](#)

**Pattern *BackMatter.class*** The content allowed at the end of a document. Note that this includes random trailing Block and Para material, to support articles with figures and similar data appearing ‘at end’.

**Content:** ([bibliography](#) | [appendix](#) | [index](#) | [acknowledgements](#) | [Para.class](#) | [Meta.class](#))

**Used by:** [document\\_model](#), [document\\_model](#)

**Add to *Para.class***

|= ([TOC](#) | [navigation](#))

## F.10 Module **LaTeXML-bib**

**Element *biblist*** A list of bibliographic [bibentry](#) or [bibitem](#).

**Used by:** [bibliography.body.class](#), [bibliography.body.class](#)

**Pattern *biblist\_attributes*** Attributes for [biblist](#).

**Attributes:** [Common.attributes](#)

**Pattern *biblist\_model*** Content model for [biblist](#).

**Content:** ([bibentry](#) | [bibitem](#))\*

**Element *bibitem*** A formatted bibliographic item, typically as written explicit in a LaTeX article. This has generally lost most of the semantics present in the BibTeX data.

**Used by:** [biblist\\_model](#), [biblist\\_model](#)

**Pattern *bibitem\_attributes*** Attributes for [bibitem](#).

**Attributes:** [Common.attributes](#), [ID.attributes](#)

**Attribute *key*** = *text*

The unique key for this object; this key is referenced by the [bibrefs](#) attribute of [bibref](#).

**Pattern *bibitem\_model*** Content model for [bibitem](#).

**Content:** [bibtag](#)\*, [bibblock](#)\*

**Expansion:** ([bibtag](#)\*, [bibblock](#)\*)

**Element *bibtag*** Various formatted tags for bibliographic items. Typically @role refnum is shown in the displayed bibliography, as the beginning of the item. Other roles (eg. number, authors, fullauthors, year, title) record formatted info to be used for filling in citations ([bibref](#)).

**Used by:** [bibitem\\_model](#), [bibitem\\_model](#)

**Pattern *bibtag\_attributes*** Attributes for *bibtag*.

**Attribute *role*** = (number | authors | fullauthors | key | year  
| bibtype | title | *text*)

**Attribute *open*** = *text*

A delimiter for formatting the refnum in the bibliography

**Attribute *close*** = *text*

A delimiter for formatting the refnum in the bibliography

**Pattern *bibtag\_model*** Content model for *bibtag*.

**Content:** *Inline.model*

**Element *bibblock*** A block of data appearing within a *bibitem*.

**Used by:** *bibitem\_model*, *bibitem\_model*

**Pattern *bibblock\_attributes*** Attributes for *bibblock*.

**Attributes:** *empty*

**Pattern *bibblock\_model*** Content model for *bibblock*.

**Content:** *Flow.model*

**Element *bibentry*** Semantic representation of a bibliography entry, typically resulting from parsing BibTeX

**Used by:** *biblist\_model*, *biblist\_model*

**Pattern *bibentry.type***

**Content:** (article | book | booklet | conference | inbook  
| incollection | inproceedings | manual  
| mastersthesis | misc | phdthesis | proceedings  
| techreport | unpublished | report | thesis | website  
| software | periodical | collection  
| collection.article | proceedings.article | *text*)

**Used by:** *bib-related\_attributes*, *bibentry\_attributes*, *bib-related\_attributes*,  
*bibentry\_attributes*

**Pattern *bibentry\_attributes*** Attributes for *bibentry*.

**Attributes:** *Common\_attributes*, *ID\_attributes*

**Attribute *key*** = *text*

The unique key for this object; this key is referenced by the *bibrefs* attribute of *bibref*.

**Attribute *type*** = *bibentry.type*

The type of the referenced object. The values are a superset of those types recognized by BibTeX, but is also open-ended for extensibility.

**Pattern *bibentry\_model*** Content model for *bibentry*.

*Content:* *Bibentry.class\**

**Element *bib-name*** Name of some participant in creating a bibliographic entry.

*Used by:* *Bibentry.class*, *Bibentry.class*

**Pattern *bib-name\_attributes*** Attributes for *bib-name*.

*Attributes:* *Common.attributes*

*Attribute **role*** = (author | editor | translator | text)

The role that this participant played in creating the entry.

**Pattern *bib-name\_model*** Content model for *bib-name*.

*Content:* *Bibname.model*

**Pattern *Bibname.model*** The content model of the bibliographic name fields (*bib-name*)

*Content:* *surname*, *givenname?*, *lineage?*

*Expansion:* (*surname*, *givenname?*, *lineage?*)

*Used by:* *bib-name\_model*, *bib-name\_model*

**Element *surname*** Surname of a participant (*bib-name*).

*Used by:* *Bibname.model*, *Bibname.model*

**Pattern *surname\_attributes*** Attributes for *surname*.

*Attributes:* *empty*

**Pattern *surname\_model*** Content model for *surname*.

*Content:* *Inline.model*

**Element *givenname*** Given name of a participant (*bib-name*).

*Used by:* *Bibname.model*, *Bibname.model*

**Pattern *givenname\_attributes*** Attributes for *givenname*.

*Attributes:* *empty*

**Pattern *givenname\_model*** Content model for *givenname*.

*Content:* *Inline.model*

**Element *lineage*** Lineage of a participant (*bib-name*), eg. Jr. or similar.

*Used by:* *Bibname.model*, *Bibname.model*

**Pattern *lineage\_attributes***     Attributes for *lineage*.

*Attributes:* *empty*

**Pattern *lineage\_model***     Content model for *lineage*.

*Content:* *Inline.model*

**Element *bib-title***     Title of a bibliographic entry.

*Used by:* *Bibentry.class*, *Bibentry.class*

**Pattern *bib-title\_attributes***     Attributes for *bib-title*.

*Attributes:* *Common.attributes*

**Pattern *bib-title\_model***     Content model for *bib-title*.

*Content:* *Inline.model*

**Element *bib-subtitle***     Subtitle of a bibliographic entry.

*Used by:* *Bibentry.class*, *Bibentry.class*

**Pattern *bib-subtitle\_attributes***     Attributes for *bib-subtitle*.

*Attributes:* *Common.attributes*

**Pattern *bib-subtitle\_model***     Content model for *bib-subtitle*.

*Content:* *Inline.model*

**Element *bib-key***     Unique key of a bibliographic entry.

*Used by:* *Bibentry.class*, *Bibentry.class*

**Pattern *bib-key\_attributes***     Attributes for *bib-key*.

*Attributes:* *Common.attributes*

**Pattern *bib-key\_model***     Content model for *bib-key*.

*Content:* *Inline.model*

**Element *bib-type***     Type of a bibliographic entry.

*Used by:* *Bibentry.class*, *Bibentry.class*

**Pattern *bib-type\_attributes***     Attributes for *bib-type*.

*Attributes:* *Common.attributes*

**Pattern *bib-type\_model***     Content model for *bib-type*.

*Content:* *Inline.model*

**Element bib-date** Date of a bibliographic entry.

*Used by:* [Bibentry.class](#), [Bibentry.class](#)

**Pattern bib-date\_attributes** Attributes for [bib-date](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Attribute role** = (publication | copyright | text)  
characterizes what happened on the given date

**Pattern bib-date\_model** Content model for [bib-date](#).

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element bib-publisher** Publisher of a bibliographic entry.

*Used by:* [Bibentry.class](#), [Bibentry.class](#)

**Pattern bib-publisher\_attributes** Attributes for [bib-publisher](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Pattern bib-publisher\_model** Content model for [bib-publisher](#).

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element bib-organization** Organization responsible for a bibliographic entry.

*Used by:* [Bibentry.class](#), [Bibentry.class](#)

**Pattern bib-organization\_attributes** Attributes for [bib-organization](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Pattern bib-organization\_model** Content model for [bib-organization](#).

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element bib-place** Location of publisher or event

*Used by:* [Bibentry.class](#), [Bibentry.class](#)

**Pattern bib-place\_attributes** Attributes for [bib-place](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Pattern bib-place\_model** Content model for [bib-place](#).

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element bib-related** A Related bibliographic object, such as the book or journal that the current item is related to.

*Used by:* [Bibentry.class](#), [Bibentry.class](#)



**Pattern *bib-related\_attributes*** Attributes for *bib-related*.

**Attributes:** *Common.attributes*

**Attribute *type*** = *bibentry.type*

The type of this related entry.

**Attribute *role*** = (host | event | original | text)

How this object relates to the containing object. Particularly important is *host* which indicates that the outer object is a part of this object.

**Attribute *bibrefs*** = text

If the *bibrefs* attribute is given, it is the key of another object in the bibliography, and this element should be empty; otherwise the object should be described by the content of the element.

**Pattern *bib-related\_model*** Content model for *bib-related*.

**Content:** *Bibentry.class*\*

**Element *bib-part*** Describes how the current object is related to a related (*bib-related*) object, in particular page, part, volume numbers and similar.

**Used by:** *Bibentry.class*, *Bibentry.class*

**Pattern *bib-part\_attributes*** Attributes for *bib-part*.

**Attributes:** *Common.attributes*

**Attribute *role*** = (pages | part | volume | issue | number | chapter | section | paragraph | text)

indicates how the value partitions the containing object.

**Pattern *bib-part\_model*** Content model for *bib-part*.

**Content:** *Inline.model*

**Element *bib-edition*** Edition of a bibliographic entry.

**Used by:** *Bibentry.class*, *Bibentry.class*

**Pattern *bib-edition\_attributes*** Attributes for *bib-edition*.

**Attributes:** *Common.attributes*

**Pattern *bib-edition\_model*** Content model for *bib-edition*.

**Content:** *Inline.model*

**Element *bib-status*** Status of a bibliographic entry.

**Used by:** *Bibentry.class*, *Bibentry.class*

**Pattern *bib-status\_attributes*** Attributes for *bib-status*.

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Pattern *bib-status\_model*** Content model for [bib-status](#).

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element *bib-identifier*** Some form of document identifier. The content is descriptive.

*Used by:* [Bibentry.class](#), [Bibentry.class](#)

**Pattern *bib-identifier\_attributes*** Attributes for [bib-identifier](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Attribute *scheme*** = (doi | issn | isbn | mr | text)  
indicates what sort of identifier it is; it is open-ended for extensibility.

**Attribute *id*** = text  
the identifier.

**Attribute *href*** = text  
a url to the document, if available

**Pattern *bib-identifier\_model*** Content model for [bib-identifier](#).

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element *bib-review*** Review of a bibliographic entry. The content is descriptive.

*Used by:* [Bibentry.class](#), [Bibentry.class](#)

**Pattern *bib-review\_attributes*** Attributes for [bib-review](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Attribute *scheme*** = (doi | issn | isbn | mr | text)  
indicates what sort of identifier it is; it is open-ended for extensibility.

**Attribute *id*** = text  
the identifier.

**Attribute *href*** = text  
a url to the review, if available

**Pattern *bib-review\_model*** Content model for [bib-review](#).

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element *bib-links*** Links to other things like preprints, source code, etc.

*Used by:* [Bibentry.class](#), [Bibentry.class](#)

**Pattern *bib-links\_attributes*** Attributes for [bib-links](#).

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Pattern `bib-links_model`** Content model for `bib-links`.

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element `bib-language`** Language of a bibliographic entry.

*Used by:* [Bibentry.class](#), [Bibentry.class](#)

**Pattern `bib-language_attributes`** Attributes for `bib-language`.

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Pattern `bib-language_model`** Content model for `bib-language`.

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element `bib-url`** A URL for a bibliographic entry. The content is descriptive

*Used by:* [Bibentry.class](#), [Bibentry.class](#)

**Pattern `bib-url_attributes`** Attributes for `bib-url`.

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

*Attribute `href`* = *text*

**Pattern `bib-url_model`** Content model for `bib-url`.

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element `bib-extract`** An extract from the referenced object.

*Used by:* [Bibentry.class](#), [Bibentry.class](#)

**Pattern `bib-extract_attributes`** Attributes for `bib-extract`.

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

*Attribute `role`* = (keywords | abstract | contents | text)  
Classify what kind of extract

**Pattern `bib-extract_model`** Content model for `bib-extract`.

*Content:* [Inline.model](#)

**Element `bib-note`** Notes about a bibliographic entry.

*Used by:* [Bibentry.class](#), [Bibentry.class](#)

**Pattern `bib-note_attributes`** Attributes for `bib-note`.

*Attributes:* [Common.attributes](#)

**Attribute role** = (annotation | publication | text)

Classify the kind of note

**Pattern bib-note.model** Content model for [bib-note](#).

**Content:** [Inline.model](#)

**Element bib-data** Random data, not necessarily even text. (future questions: should model be text or ANY? maybe should have encoding attribute?).

**Used by:** [Bibentry.class](#), [Bibentry.class](#)

**Pattern bib-data.attributes** Attributes for [bib-data](#).

**Attributes:** [Common.attributes](#)

**Attribute role** = text

Classify the relationship of the data to the entry.

**Attribute type** = text

Classify the type of the data.

**Pattern bib-data.model** Content model for [bib-data](#).

**Content:** [Inline.model](#)

**Pattern Bibentry.class**

**Content:** (bib-name | bib-title | bib-subtitle | bib-key | bib-type  
| bib-date | bib-publisher | bib-organization | bib-place | bib-part  
| bib-related | bib-edition | bib-status | bib-language | bib-url  
| bib-note | bib-extract | bib-identifier | bib-review | bib-links  
| bib-data)

**Used by:** [bib-related\\_model](#), [bibentry\\_model](#), [bib-related\\_model](#),  
[bibentry\\_model](#)

## Appendix G

# Error Codes

Warning and Error messages are printed to STDERR during the execution of `latexml` and `latexmlpost`. As with `TEX`, it is not always possible to indicate where the real underlying mistake originated; sometimes it is only realized later on that some problem has occurred, such as a missing brace. Moreover, whereas error messages from `TEX` may be safely assumed to indicate errors with the source document, with `LATEXML` they may also indicate `LATEXML`'s inability to figure out what you wanted, or simply bugs in `LATEXML`, itself.

**Warnings** are generally informative that the generated result may not be as good as it can be, but is most likely properly formed. A typical warning is that the math parser failed to recognize an expression.

**Errors** generally indicate a more serious problem that is likely to lead to a malformed result. A typical error would be an undefined control sequence. Generally, processing continues so that you can (hopefully) solve all errors at once.

**Fatals** are errors so serious as to make it unlikely that processing can continue; the system is likely to be out-of-sync, for example not knowing from which point in the input to continue reading. A fatal error is also generated when too many (typically 100 regular errors have been encountered).

Warning and Error messages are slightly structured to allow unattended processing of documents to classify the degree of success in processing. A typical message satisfies the following regular expression:

```
(Warning|Error|Fatal) (: \S*) \s+ (.*)
```

The type is followed by one or more keywords separated by colons, then a space, and a human readable error message. Generally, this line is followed by one or more lines describing where in the source document the error occurred (or was detected). For example:

```
Error:undefined:\foo The control sequence \foo is undefined.
```

Some of the more common keywords following the message type are listed below, where we assume that *arg* is the second keyword (if any).

The following errors are generally due to malformed  $\text{\TeX}$  input, incomplete  $\text{\LaTeX}$ ML bindings, or bindings that do not properly account for the way  $\text{\TeX}$ , or the macros, are actually used.

**undefined** : *arg* indicates the undefined control sequence.

**expected** : *arg* was expected in the input but missing. The expected thing will likely either be a control sequence or something like `<variable>` to indicate that a variable was expected.

**unexpected** : *arg* was not expected to appear in the input.

**missing\_file** : the file *arg* could not be found. Also used when the file is otherwise not readable or processable.

**latex** : An error or message generated from  $\text{\LaTeX}$  code.

**parse** : An issue parsing the mathematics.

The following errors are more likely to be due to programming errors in the  $\text{\LaTeX}$ ML core, or in binding files, or in the document model.

**perl** : A perl-level error or warning, not specifically recognized by  $\text{\LaTeX}$ ML, was encountered. The second keyword will typically `die`, `interrupt` or `warn`.

**malformed** : some sort of malformed XML problem.

**model** : some sort of problem with the document model or schema.

**misdefined** : Some sort of error in the definition of *arg*.

**internal** : Something unexpected happened; most likely an internal coding error within  $\text{\LaTeX}$ ML.

**too.many** : Too many error were encountered.

Should there be an additional level that identifies the processing stage? Eg. `mouth`, `gullet`, `stomach`, `intestine`, ...? That might semi-automatically distinguish expected, unexpected, malformed? Or does it?

# Index

- about
  - attribute, 153
- abstract
  - element, 184
- acknowledgements
  - element, 184
- acronym
  - element, 148
- align
  - attribute, 147, 168, 170
- anchor
  - element, 149
- angle1
  - attribute, 171
- angle2
  - attribute, 171
- appendix
  - element, 180
- appendix.body.class*
  - schema pattern, 180
- arc
  - attribute, 171
  - element, 174
- arcsepA
  - attribute, 171
- arcsepB
  - attribute, 171
- argclose
  - attribute, 163
- argopen
  - attribute, 163
- arrowlength
  - attribute, 171
- AssignCatcode, 93
- AssignValue, 92
- AtBeginDocument, 86
- backgroundcolor
  - attribute, 146
- BackMatter.class*
  - schema pattern, 188
- Balanced, 75
- BalancedParen, 75
- baseline
  - attribute, 172
- bezier
  - element, 174
- Bib (LaTeXML : : )
  - module, 129
    - BibEntry objects, 129
    - Creating a Bib, 129
    - Description, 129
    - Methods, 129
- bib-data
  - element, 196
- bib-date
  - element, 192
- bib-edition
  - element, 193
- bib-extract
  - element, 195
- bib-identifier
  - element, 194
- bib-key
  - element, 191
- bib-language
  - element, 195
- bib-links
  - element, 194
- bib-name

- element, 190
- bib-note
  - element, 195
- bib-organization
  - element, 192
- bib-part
  - element, 193
- bib-place
  - element, 192
- bib-publisher
  - element, 192
- bib-related
  - element, 192
- bib-review
  - element, 194
- bib-status
  - element, 193
- bib-subtitle
  - element, 191
- bib-title
  - element, 191
- bib-type
  - element, 191
- bib-url
  - element, 195
- bibblock
  - element, 189
- bibentry
  - element, 189
- Bibentry.class*
  - schema pattern, 196
- bibentry.type*
  - schema pattern, 189
- bibitem
  - element, 188
- bibliography
  - element, 180
- bibliography.body.class*
  - schema pattern, 180
- biblist
  - element, 188
- Bibname.model*
  - schema pattern, 190
- bibref
  - element, 150
- bibrefphrase
  - element, 150
- bibrefs
  - attribute, 150, 193
- bibtag
  - element, 188
- block
  - element, 155
- Block.class*
  - schema pattern, 141
- Block.model*
  - schema pattern, 140
- border
  - attribute, 168, 170
- Box (LaTeXML: : )
  - architecture, 12
  - module, 103
    - Box Methods, 104
    - Common Methods, 103
    - Description, 103
    - Whatsit Methods, 104
- boxsep
  - attribute, 172
- break
  - element, 156
- candidates
  - attribute, 158
- caption
  - element, 161
- Caption.class*
  - schema pattern, 159
- chapter
  - element, 177
- chapter.body.class*
  - schema pattern, 177
- circle
  - element, 174
- cite
  - element, 150
- class
  - attribute, 142
- classification
  - element, 185
- CleanIndexKey, 94
- CleanLabel, 94
- CleanURL, 94



- clip
  - attribute, 172
  - element, 176
- clippath
  - element, 176
- close
  - attribute, 157, 162, 189
- color
  - attribute, 146
- Color.type*
  - schema pattern, 142
- Colorable.attributes*
  - schema pattern, 146
- colspan
  - attribute, 168, 170
- Common.attributes*
  - schema pattern, 142
- constraint
  - element, 153
- Constructor (LaTeXML::)
  - architecture, 13
- contact
  - element, 183
- content
  - attribute, 152
- Content (LaTeXML::Post::MathML)
  - LaTeXML::Post::MathML::Presentation, 77
  - LaTeXML::Post::MathML::Depth, 146
  - module
    - Content Conversion Utilities, 137
    - DefMathML(\$key,\$presentation,\$content), 136
    - Description, 135
    - Math Processors, Generally., 138
    - Presentation Conversion Utilities, 136
    - Synopsis, 135
- Content (LaTeXML::Post::MathML,DefRewrite,90)
  - LaTeXML::Post::MathML::Presentation, 77
  - LaTeXML::Post::MathML::Depth, 146
  - module, 135
- content-tex
  - attribute, 162, 172
- CounterValue, 87
- creator
  - element, 183
- curvature
  - attribute, 172
- curve
  - element, 175
- datatype
  - attribute, 153
- date
  - element, 184
- DeclareOption, 86
- DefColumnType, 92
- DefConditional, 77
- DefConditionalI, 77
- DefConstructor, 79
- DefConstructorI, 81
- DefEnvironment, 83
- DefEnvironmentI, 83
- Definition (LaTeXML::)
  - architecture, 12
  - module, 65
    - Description, 65
    - Methods in general, 65
    - More about Constructors, 67
    - More about Primitives, 66
    - More about Registers, 66
- DefLigature, 90
- DefMacro, 76
- DefMath, 81
- DefMathI, 83
- DefMathLigature, 90
- DefMathRewrite, 90
- DefParameterType, 92
- DefPrimitive, 77
- DefPrimitiveI, 79
- DefRegister, 79
- DefRegisterI, 79
- DefRewrite, 90
- depth
  - attribute, 146
- description
  - attribute, 147
  - element, 157
- Digest, 91
- Digested, 76
- Dimension, 75
- displayedpoints

- attribute, 171
- DocType, 89
- document
  - element, 176
- Document (LaTeXML::)
  - architecture, 13
- Document (LaTeXML::)
  - module, 116
    - Accessors, 116
    - Construction Methods, 117
    - Description, 116
    - Document Modification, 120
    - Internal Insertion Methods, 119
- document.body.class*
  - schema pattern, 176
- dots
  - element, 175
- doubleline
  - attribute, 172
- ellipse
  - element, 174
- emph
  - element, 148
- enclose
  - attribute, 162
- enumerate
  - element, 156
- equation
  - element, 154
- equationgroup
  - element, 154
- EquationMeta.class*
  - schema pattern, 153
- ERROR
  - element, 151
- Error (LaTeXML::)
  - module, 72
    - Description, 72
    - Functions, 72
- ExecuteOptions, 86
- Expand, 91
- Expandable (LaTeXML::)
  - architecture, 12
- figure
  - element, 159
- files
  - attribute, 181
- fill
  - attribute, 171
- fillframe
  - attribute, 172
- FindFile, 83
- float
  - attribute, 147
  - element, 160
- Flow.model*
  - schema pattern, 140
- font
  - attribute, 145
- Font (LaTeXML::)
  - module, 108
    - Description, 108
    - LaTeXML::MathFont, 108
- Fontable.attributes*
  - schema pattern, 145
- fontsize
  - attribute, 146
- format
  - attribute, 155, 186
- framecolor
  - attribute, 147
- framed
  - attribute, 147, 172
- frametype
  - attribute, 172
- frefnum
  - attribute, 145
- FrontMatter.attributes*
  - schema pattern, 187
- FrontMatter.class*
  - schema pattern, 187
- g
  - element, 173
- GenerateID, 87
- givenname
  - element, 190
- Global (LaTeXML::)
  - module, 68
    - Boxes, etc., 69

- Description, 68
  - Error Reporting, 70
  - Generic functions, 71
  - Global state, 68
  - Numbers, etc., 69
  - Synopsis, 68
  - Tokens, 68
- Glue, 75
- graphic
  - attribute, 158
- graphics
  - element, 157
- grid
  - element, 175
- Gullet (LaTeXML::)
  - architecture, 12
  - module, 111
    - Description, 111
    - High-level methods, 113
    - Low-level methods, 111
    - Managing Input, 111
    - Mid-level methods, 112
- height
  - attribute, 146, 165, 171
- hidden
  - attribute, 154
- href
  - attribute, 149, 194, 195
- id
  - attribute, 194
- ID.attributes*
  - schema pattern, 144
- idref
  - attribute, 145
- IDREF.attributes*
  - schema pattern, 145
- Imageable.attributes*
  - schema pattern, 147
- imagedepth
  - attribute, 147
- imageheight
  - attribute, 147
- imagesrc
  - attribute, 147
- imagewidth
  - attribute, 147
- index
  - element, 181
- index.body.class*
  - schema pattern, 181
- indexentry
  - element, 181
- indexlist
  - element, 181
- indexmark
  - element, 151
- indexphrase
  - element, 152
- indexrefs
  - element, 182
- indexsee
  - element, 152
- inline-block
  - element, 156
- inline-para
  - element, 159
- Inline.class*
  - schema pattern, 141
- Inline.model*
  - schema pattern, 139
- Input, 84
- InputContent, 84
- InputDefinitions, 84
- InstallDefinition, 93
- Invocation, 91
- item
  - element, 157
- itemize
  - element, 156
- key
  - attribute, 152, 188, 189
- KeyVal (LaTeXML::Util::)
  - module, 133
    - Accessors, 133
    - Declarations, 133
    - Description, 133
    - KeyVal Methods, 133
- Keyword, 75
- keywords

- element, 184
- Labelled.attributes*
  - schema pattern, 145
- labelref
  - attribute, 149
- labels
  - attribute, 145
- LaTeXML
  - architecture, 11
- LaTeXML
  - module, 61
    - Customization, 62
    - Description, 61
    - Methods, 61
    - See also, 62
    - Synopsis, 61
- latexml
  - basic usage, 4
- latexml
  - command, 43
    - Options & Arguments, 44
    - See also, 46
    - Synopsis, 43
- latexmlmath
  - basic usage, 9
- latexmlmath
  - command, 55
    - BUGS, 58
    - Conversion Options, 56
    - Input notes, 55
    - Options & Arguments, 56
    - Other Options, 57
    - See also, 58
    - Synopsis, 55
- latexmlpost
  - basic usage, 5
    - site building, 9
    - split pages, 8
- latexmlpost
  - command, 47
    - Format Options, 49
    - General Options, 49
    - Graphics Options, 54
    - Math Options, 52
    - Options & Arguments, 49
    - See also, 54
    - Site & Crossreferencing Options, 50
    - Source Options, 49
    - Synopsis, 47
- Length.type*
  - schema pattern, 142
- Let, 91
- line
  - element, 173
- lineage
  - element, 190
- List (LaTeXML::)
  - architecture, 12
- listing
  - element, 160
- listingblock
  - element, 155
- LoadClass, 86
- LoadPool, 86
- LookupCatcode, 93
- LookupDefinition, 93
- LookupMeaning, 93
- LookupValue, 92
- lspace
  - attribute, 163
- mark
  - attribute, 151
- Match, 75
- Math
  - element, 162
- Math.class*
  - schema pattern, 161
- MathBranch
  - element, 155
- MathFork
  - element, 154
- MathParser (LaTeXML::)
  - architecture, 13
- MathParser (LaTeXML::)
  - module, 127
    - Convenience functions, 127
    - Description, 127
    - Math Representation, 127
    - Possible Customizations, 127

- mathstyle
  - attribute, 164
- meaning
  - attribute, 164–167
- MergeFont, 94
- Meta.class*
  - schema pattern, 142
- Misc.class*
  - schema pattern, 141
- mode
  - attribute, 162
- Model (LaTeXML::)
  - architecture, 13
- Model (LaTeXML::)
  - module, 123
    - Description, 123
    - Document Type, 123
    - Model Creation, 123
    - Model queries, 124
    - Namespaces, 123
    - Rewrite Rules, 125
    - Tag Properties, 124
- Mouth (LaTeXML::)
  - architecture, 12
  - module, 109
    - Creating Mouths, 109
    - Description, 109
    - Methods, 109
- MuGlue, 75
- name
  - attribute, 148, 152, 164–167, 187
- navigation
  - element, 186
- NewCounter, 87
- note
  - element, 151
- Number, 75
- Number (LaTeXML::)
  - module, 106
    - Common methods, 106
    - Description, 106
    - Numerics methods, 107
- Object (LaTeXML::)
  - module, 64
    - Description, 64
    - Methods, 64
- omcd
  - attribute, 164, 167
- opacity
  - attribute, 146
- open
  - attribute, 157, 162, 189
- options
  - attribute, 158
- p
  - element, 153
- Package (LaTeXML::)
  - module, 73
    - Access to State, 92
    - Argument Readers, 92
    - Class and Packages, 85
    - Conditionals, 77
    - Constructors, 79
    - Control of Scoping, 76
    - Control Sequence Parameters, 74
    - Control Sequences, 74
    - Counters and IDs, 87
    - Description, 74
    - Document Model, 88
    - Document Rewriting, 90
    - Font Encoding, 93
    - Inputting Content and Definitions, 83
    - Low-level Functions, 94
    - Macros, 76
    - Mid-Level support, 91
    - Primitives, 77
    - Synopsis, 73
- pad-height
  - attribute, 146
- pad-width
  - attribute, 146
- para
  - element, 158
- Para.class*
  - schema pattern, 141
- Para.model*
  - schema pattern, 140
- parabola

- element, 175
- paragraph
  - element, 179
- paragraph.body.class*
  - schema pattern, 179
- Parameters (LaTeXML::)
  - module, 96
    - Description, 96
    - Parameters Methods, 96
- part
  - element, 176
- part.body.class*
  - schema pattern, 177
- PassOptions, 86
- path
  - element, 174
- Pathname (LaTeXML::Util::)
  - module, 131
    - Description, 131
    - File System Operations, 132
    - Pathname Manipulations, 131
- Person.class*
  - schema pattern, 183
- personname
  - element, 183
- picture
  - element, 172
- Picture.attributes*
  - schema pattern, 171
- Picture.class*
  - schema pattern, 171
- PictureGroup.attributes*
  - schema pattern, 172
- placement
  - attribute, 160, 161
- Plain, 75
- points
  - attribute, 171
- polygon
  - element, 173
- pos
  - attribute, 172
- Positionable.attributes*
  - schema pattern, 146
- possibleFunction
  - attribute, 163
- Post (LaTeXML::)
  - architecture, 14
- Post (LaTeXML::)
  - module, 135
- Primitive (LaTeXML::)
  - architecture, 12
- ProcessOptions, 86
- proof
  - element, 159
- property
  - attribute, 152
- punctuation
  - attribute, 163
- PushValue, 93
- quote
  - element, 155
- r
  - attribute, 171
- RawTeX, 91
- rdf
  - element, 152
- rdf-prefixes
  - attribute, 186
- ReadParameters, 92
- rect
  - element, 173
- ref
  - element, 149
- refnum
  - attribute, 145
- RefStepCounter, 87
- RefStepID, 87
- RegisterDocumentNamespace, 89
- RegisterNamespace, 89
- rel
  - attribute, 153
- RelaxNGSchema, 89
- RequirePackage, 85
- ResetCounter, 87
- resource
  - attribute, 153
- Rewrite (LaTeXML::)
  - architecture, 13
- Rewrite (LaTeXML::)

- module, 126
  - Description, 126
  - Methods, 126
- role
  - attribute, 151, 162, 183–185, 189, 190, 192, 193, 195, 196
- Roman, 95
- roman, 95
- rowspan
  - attribute, 168, 170
- rspace
  - attribute, 163
- rule
  - attribute, 167
  - element, 149
- rx
  - attribute, 171
- ry
  - attribute, 171
- scheme
  - attribute, 185, 194
- scriptpos
  - attribute, 164–167
- section
  - element, 177
- section.body.class*
  - schema pattern, 177
- Sectional.attributes*
  - schema pattern, 186
- SectionalFrontMatter.class*
  - schema pattern, 187
- see\_also
  - attribute, 151
- select
  - attribute, 185
- Semiverbatim, 75
- separator
  - attribute, 150
- separators
  - attribute, 163
- shadowbox
  - attribute, 172
- show
  - attribute, 149, 150
- showpoints
  - attribute, 171
- Skip1Space, 76
- SkipSpaces, 76
- slide
  - element, 179
- slide.body.class*
  - schema pattern, 180
- State (LaTeXML: :)
  - module, 98
  - Access to State and Processing, 98
  - Category Codes, 99
  - Definitions, 100
  - Description, 98
  - Named Scopes, 100
  - Scoping, 98
  - Values, 99
- StepCounter, 87
- Stomach (LaTeXML: :)
  - architecture, 12
  - module, 114
  - Description, 114
  - Digestion, 114
  - Grouping, 115
  - Modes, 115
- stroke
  - attribute, 171
- stroke-dasharray
  - attribute, 171
- stroke-width
  - attribute, 171
- style
  - attribute, 151, 166
- subparagraph
  - element, 179
- subparagraph.body.class*
  - schema pattern, 179
- subsection
  - element, 178
- subsection.body.class*
  - schema pattern, 178
- subsubsection
  - element, 178
- subsubsection.body.class*
  - schema pattern, 178
- subtitle
  - element, 182

- surname
  - element, 190
- svg
  - schema pattern, 158
- table
  - element, 160
- tabular
  - element, 169
- Tag, 88
- tag
  - element, 157
- tbody
  - element, 169
- td
  - element, 170
- terminators
  - attribute, 171
- tex
  - attribute, 162, 172
- text
  - attribute, 162
  - element, 148
- tfoot
  - element, 169
- thead
  - attribute, 168, 170
  - element, 169
- theorem
  - element, 159
- thickness
  - attribute, 164
- title
  - attribute, 149
  - element, 182
- titlepage
  - element, 185
- TOC
  - element, 185
- toccaption
  - element, 161
- tocentry
  - element, 186
- toclist
  - element, 186
- toctitle
  - element, 182
- Token, 75
- Token (LaTeXML::)
  - architecture, 12
  - module, 101
  - Common methods, 101
  - Description, 101
  - Token methods, 101
  - Tokens methods, 101
- Tokens (LaTeXML::)
  - architecture, 12
- tr
  - element, 170
- transform
  - attribute, 171
- type
  - attribute, 189, 193, 196
- Undigested, 76
- unitlength
  - attribute, 172
- UnshiftValue, 93
- Until, 75
- UntilBrace, 75
- UTF, 94
- Variable, 76
- vattach
  - attribute, 147, 167, 169
- verbatim
  - element, 156
- wedge
  - element, 173
- Whatsit (LaTeXML::)
  - architecture, 12
- width
  - attribute, 146, 165, 167–171
- x
  - attribute, 171
- XMAApp
  - element, 164
- XMAArg
  - element, 166
- XMAArray



- element, [167](#)
- XMath
  - element, [163](#)
- XMath.attributes*
  - schema pattern, [162](#)
- XMath.class*
  - schema pattern, [162](#)
- XMCell
  - element, [168](#)
- XMDual
  - element, [165](#)
- XMHint
  - element, [165](#)
- xml:id
  - attribute, [144](#)
- XMRef
  - element, [167](#)
- XMRow
  - element, [168](#)
- XMText
  - element, [166](#)
- XMTok
  - element, [164](#)
- XMWrap
  - element, [166](#)
- xoffset
  - attribute, [147](#)
- XToken, [75](#)
- xunitlength
  - attribute, [172](#)
- XUntil, [75](#)
- y
  - attribute, [171](#)
- yoffset
  - attribute, [147](#)
- yunitlength
  - attribute, [172](#)
- yyseparator
  - attribute, [150](#)